Lieutenant General
Prince MENZIKOFF

From an Original Painting in the Possession of Alex.r Gordon of Dorlathers Esq.r

Lieutenant General
Prince MENZIKOFF

From an Original Painting in the Possession of Alex.r Gordon of Dorlathers Esq.r

THE HISTORY OF PETER the GREAT, EMPEROR of *RUSSIA*.

To which is prefixed, A ſhort

GENERAL HISTORY of the COUNTRY,

FROM THE

RISE of that MONARCHY:

AND AN

Account of the AUTHOR's Life.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. II.

By ALEXANDER GORDON *of* ACHINTOUL, *Eſq; ſeveral Years a Major-General in the* CZAR's *Service.*

Illuſtrated with a Map of RUSSIA; the Heads of Czar PETER, Prince MENZEKOFF and the AUTHOR, engraved from original Paintings.

ABERDEEN:

Printed by and for F. DOUGLASS and W. MURRAY:

Sold by C. HITCH and L. HAWES in *Paternoſter-Row*, London; by the Bookſellers of *Edinburgh* and *Glaſgow;* and at *Aberdeen* by the ſaid F. DOUGLASS and W. MURRAY at their Shops in the *Broadgate*. M, DCC, LV.

MVSEVM
BRITAN
NICVM

Entered in STATIONERS-HALL according to Act of Parliament.

CONTENTS

OF THE

SECOND VOLUME.

BOOK IX.

KING Auguſtus *returns to* Poland, *and declares his renunciation null. King* Staniſlaus *retires incognito. The Czar re-enters* Poland. *Meets with King* Auguſtus *at* Thorn. *Marches thence to* Marienworder, *where he has an interview with the King of* Pruſſia, *and enters into a new alliance: after which he paſſed through* Koningſberg *to* Mittau; *from which place he joined his army, which had already inveſted* Riga. *From* Riga *he goes to St.* Peterſburgh, *and from thence to* Moſcow, *where he makes his magnificent triumphant entry. The* Turks *declare war againſt the Czar. The affair on the* Pruth.

BOOK X.

Staroſta Grudzinſky *makes an irruption into* Poland. *Surprizes General* Bower's *regiment at* Piſdry: *at laſt defeated by that General.*

General. The Grand Seignior declares war for the third time againſt Ruſſia. *The King of* Sweden *abſolutely refuſes to return to his own dominions, but by an armed force. The* Turks *conclude a peace with the Czar. His expedition into* Holſtein; *alſo into* Finland. Abo *taken. A battle at* Pulcona. Rugen *taken, likeways* Stetin. *The battle of* Capla. Vaſa *taken; alſo* Nyſlot. *The deſcent into* Allandt. *The Czar's triumphant entry into St.* Peterſburgh.

BOOK XI.

The King of Sweden *returns to his dominions: believed to be in concert with the Grand Seignior to attack* Ruſſia. *The Czar makes a deſcent into* Sweden. *The imperial Princeſs is delivered of a ſon, and dies in a few days after. The* Tartars *in motion. New diſorders in* Poland. Cajaneberg *taken. The Duke of* Mechlenburgh's *marriage with the Czar's niece. The Czar meets with the King of* Pruſſia. Wiſmar *ſurrenders. The Czar at* Copenhagen: *is at the head of four combined fleets. The deſcent into* Schonen *ſuſpended. The Czar takes journey for* Holland. *Baron* Gortz's *intrigues diſcovered. The Czar's journey to* France. *His*

His return through Flanders *into* Holland: *from thence through* Germany *to his own frontiers.*

BOOK XII.

The Czar eſtabliſhes a chamber of juſtice to enquire into the diſorders of the government. The Cuban Tartars *make incurſions into the kingdom of* Caſan. *The Czarowich's flight. The Czar writes him a letter. The Czarowich's anſwer. The Czar writes him a ſecond letter, having diſcovered the place of his retirement. The Czarowich anſwers it, and returns to* Moſcow. *Formally renounces the ſucceſſion. Queſtions propoſed by the Czar. Anſwered by the Czarowich. The opinions of the clergy. A ſenate called, who judge and condemn the Czarowich. The Czar pardons him. His death.*

BOOK XIII.

Baron Gortz *prevails with the King of* Sweden *to finiſh the treaty with the Czar. The plenipotentiaries meet at* Allandt. *The plan of the peace concerted betwixt* Oſterman *and* Gortz. *The articles thereof. The affairs of* Poland. *The King of* Sweden *beſieges* Frederickſhall: *is killed. Baron* Gortz *arreſted, and condemned. The negotiations*

negotiations continued. The Czar publiſhes a manifeſto on his expedition into Sweden. *The Queen of* Sweden *publiſhes a counter-manifeſto. The* Ruſſians *burn and deſtroy all along the coaſt of* Sweden. *An account of the places ruined in this expedition. The Czar leaves* Sweden. *Mr.* Weſelofsky *preſents a memorial to the court of* Great Britain. *Anſwered by King* George *as elector of* Hanover; *then as King of* Great Britain. *The Czar's diſcourſe to the chamber of juſtice. The death of the Czarowich* Peter.

BOOK XIV.

The Czar cauſes make a harbour at Rogerwick. *Undertakes the canal of* Ladoga. *The affairs of* Poland. *Preparations againſt* Sweden. *Cauſes preſent a memorial by his reſident* Beſtuchoff *to the court of* Great Britain. *Admiral* Norris *writes a letter to Prince* Dolgoruky *the* Ruſſian *ambaſſador. His anſwer. The Czar refuſes the mediation of* Great Britain. *The new King of* Sweden *ſends an envoy to the Czar. The operations of the campaign. The Czar ſends an envoy to* Stockholm. *The affairs of* Holſtein. *The Czar enters into negotiations with* Sweden, *and accepts of the mediation of* France. *A congreſs appointed at* Nieſtadt. *A deſcent on* Sweden.

den. *A ceſſation of arms. Peace concluded at* Nieſtadt.

BOOK XV.

The Czar's titles in foreign letters. Acknowledged Emperor by moſt of the powers in Europe, *&c. His triumphant entry into* Moſcow. *His ſpeech concerning the ſucceſſion. The ſtate of affairs in* Perſia. Miriweys *enters that kingdom. The Czar ſends an ambaſſador into* Perſia. *Marches at the head of a great army to ſupport the Schah, Publiſhes a manifeſto over* Perſia. *The Schah demands aſſiſtance from his Czariſh majeſty. The campaign in* Perſia. *The* Turks *take umbrage thereat. The Sultan publiſhes a manifeſto. The* Turks *made eaſy by the means of the* French *ambaſſador at the* Porte. *The Emperor returns from* Perſia *to St.* Peterſburgh.

BOOK XVI.

The Emperor puts to ſea with a conſiderable fleet. Gives ſhips to ſeveral towns. The Duke of Holſtein *demands from* Sweden *the title of Royal Highneſs. The Emperor of* Ruſſia's *pretenſions on* Denmark. *An ambaſſador arrives from* Perſia. Baku *ſurrenders to the* Ruſſian *troops. The* Turks *conceive new jealouſies. A new treaty*

treaty entered into. The coronation of the Empreſs Katharine *at* Moſcow. *The court returns to St.* Peterſburgh. *The Emperor's death. His character. The characters of ſome of the chief perſons in his court.*

APPENDIX.

Deſcription of St. Peterſburgh *and* Cronſtat. *Account of the revenues, taxes, forces, and dreſs of the* Ruſſians. *Anecdotes of* Peter *the Great.* Ruſſian *coins, weights and meaſures. Mr.* Ilbrand's *journey from* Moſcow *to* China.

THE

THE HISTORY OF *PETER* the *GREAT*, EMPEROR of *RUSSIA*.

BOOK IX.

THE victory at *Pultawa* occaſioned a very great change of affairs in *Poland*. King *Auguſtus* made preparations to return and take poſſeſſion of his kingdom, having publiſhed a declaration, that his renouncing the crown in favour of *Staniſlaus*, was, beſides its being a force upon him, illegal in itſelf, ſeeing the republic had not conſented thereto, nor had they been all aſſembled for that purpoſe; and as his renunciation, bearing date the 20th of *October* at *Pleſkow*, was no more in force, he was reſolved to return and take poſſeſſion of a throne which belonged to him by the laws of GOD and man.

BOOK IX.

1709. King *Auguſtus* publiſhes a declaration on the change of affairs,

BOOK IX.

is welcomed into *Poland*.

As he entered *Poland*, a great many ſenators went to welcome him: amongſt others, ſeveral who had been engaged with King *Staniſlaus*: he pardoned not only theſe, but all who repaired to him and abandoned that party.

King *Staniſlaus*, after General *Goltz* had beat his army, and General *Craſſow* left him, went hither and thither incognito, till getting account of the King of *Sweden*'s defeat at *Pultawa*, he did not think himſelf ſafe in any part of *Poland*, but retired to the frontiers of *Hungary*; removing from place to place, accompanied only by a few ſervants; and at laſt went into *Turky*, where he was made priſoner, about the time the King of *Sweden* had been forced and taken by the *Janiſſaries* and *Tartars* at *Bender*.

Staniſlaus priſoner in *Turky*.

The *Swedes* had no more footing in *Poland*, ſave only that Prince *Lubomirſky*, and *Starroſta Spitſky*, who had amongſt the firſt eſpouſed King *Staniſlaus*'s intereſt, had not hitherto ſubmitted; and that *Elbing* in the *Royal Pruſſia*, was garriſoned by a few *Swedes*.

The Czar having croſſed the *Boriſthenes*, on his return to *Poland*, marched through *Black-Ruſſia* to *Uganow*, where General *Goltz* ſtood encamped with the troops under his command. Here he continued three days, reviewing them, and cauſing them perform

perform their exerciſe: from thence he went to the *Viſtula*, where, on board a flat bottomed veſſel he had cauſed prepare for that purpoſe, he went down the river to *Thorn*, cauſing his guards and dragoons march by land. At this place, King *Auguſtus* came on board his veſſel, where he met with the Czar the firſt time, after his treaty at *Altranſtadt*: the two princes embraced one another, but the King was very much out of countenance; which the Czar remarking, bid him not mind the paſt, for he knew very well that the King of *Sweden* had much diſtreſſed and impoveriſhed his country, but now they had got full ſatisfaction, and he believed he would not return there on haſte.

The Czar and King *Auguſtus* meet at *Thorn*.

The Czar, 'tis true, had no reaſon to complain, for beſides the routing of his army at *Pultawa*, all the treaſure the King of *Sweden* had raiſed in *Poland* and *Saxony*, went into his Czariſh majeſty's coffers.

The Czar only continued a few days with King *Auguſtus* at *Thorn*, then purſued his march through *Poliſh Pruſſia* to *Marienworder*, where on the 26th of *October* he met with the King of *Pruſſia*, without any great formality: they dined together next day at Prince *Menzekoff*'s quarters. On the 29th, Count *Fleming*, King *Auguſtus*'s firſt miniſter and favourite, came

BOOK IX.

to treat of ſome affairs; where the Czar told him in few words, 'That as he had 'done the whole work alone, being aban- 'doned by all his allies, he was to have no 'regard to former treaties, but was reſol- 'ved, not to divide the profits; that neither 'the republic of *Poland*, nor King *Augu- ſtus* ſhould have any ſhare in the con- 'queſts he had already made in *Livonia*, or 'was thereafter to make, being reſolved to 'annex the whole to the *Ruſſian* empire.'

The Czar reſolves to indemnify himſelf for his expence in the war.

Whereupon, Count *Fleming* in name of his maſter replied, 'That neither the King, 'nor as he believed the republic of *Poland*, 'had any thoughts of the conqueſt of *Livo- 'nia;* and that he on the King's part was 'willing (if his Czariſh majeſty inclined) 'to renounce all pretenſions thereto': ſo they entered into a new treaty, wherein the King of *Pruſſia* had a concern. This King likeways prevailed upon the Czar to evacuate *Courland*, and to raiſe no more contributi- ons out of that country, the Duke being his ſiſter's ſon; who the year after came to St. *Petersburgh*, and there was married to the Emperor's niece, *Anna Joanowna*, af- terwards Empreſs of *Ruſſia*.

His niece married next year to the Duke of *Courland*.

On the 6th of *November*, the Czar part- ed with his *Pruſſian* majeſty, purſuing his march through *Konings berg* into *Courland:* he arrived at *Mittau* the 17th, being met without

without the town by the Land-marſhal, the magiſtrates and burghers, drawn up in arms as he paſſed, and every thing in the greateſt order. Having reſted there a few days, on the 26th, he joined his army which lay encamped before *Riga*, commanded by Marſhal *Sheremetoff*, who had waited till the coming up of the artillery, conſiſting of ſixty great guns and twenty-four mortars, with ammunition in proportion.

Riga inveſted.

As the *Ruſſian* army advanced to inveſt this place, Major-general *Stackelberg*, with about two thouſand of the *Swediſh* cavalry, came boldly up and attacked the *Ruſſian* fore-troops, commanded by Lieutenant-general *Bower*, who repulſed them with the loſs of fifty men killed, and about thirty more wounded and taken priſoners. On the 28th, the Czar cauſed carry on the attacks with all diligence; two batteries conſiſting of fifteen guns each, and a bomb-battery of ſixteen mortars, playing without intermiſſion: the place not being like to ſurrender ſoon, the Czar took journey for St. *Petersburgh*, leaving the direction of the ſiege to Marſhal *Sheremetoff*; who on the 6th of *December* publiſhed a declaration in his maſter's name over all *Livonia*, offering them not only his protection, but to preſerve their antient privileges. Whereupon the Governor cauſed publiſh another in name of the King of

A declaration publiſhed over all *Livonia*.

BOOK IX. of *Sweden*, 'exhorting the *Livonians* to 'continue in their duty, and not to put con-'fidence in the unfaithful *Ruſſians*; that 'he ſoon expected an army from *Sweden*, 'wherewith, he not only hoped to oblige 'them to abandon the ſiege, but to drive them 'out of the country; that beſides, he had all 'the reaſon in the world to believe, that 'their maſter the King of *Sweden* was in the 'ſpring to enter *Poland* at the head of one 'hundred thouſand *Turks*, which would 'ſoon change the face of affairs.'

The Governor of *Riga* publiſhes another.

By this time the town had been ſo bombarded, that a third part of the houſes were deſtroyed: this unhappy place had not only the enemy without, but a moſt dangerous one within, the plague, raging to that degree, that it conſumed numbers of the garriſon and inhabitants; but the Governor would not think as yet of ſurrendering.

The Emperor left St. *Petersburgh* in the beginning of *December*, and went to *Moſcow*, where he made his public triumphant entry, after having continued ſome days at *Columſka*, within four miles of the city, until all was prepared for that purpoſe.

The Czar's triumphal entry into *Moſcow*, 1710.

This triumphant entry (little inferior to thoſe of the antient *Romans*) was made on the firſt day of the new-year 1710. All the clergy and great men, in moſt ſumptuous apparel, met his majeſty a little without the

firſt

firſt triumphal arch, whereof there were ſeven, congratulating him on his great ſucceſs, ſtrowing artificial flowers in his way, and carrying palms in their hands. The *Swediſh* generals and officers taken at *Leſno* and *Pultawa*, marched conform to their rank; the *Swedes* having done the ſame at *Stockholm*, by the *Ruſſian* generals, and other officers taken at the firſt affair before *Narva*. At this proceſſion were carried, the artillery, ſtandards, colours and waggons taken from the *Swedes*, with the litter of *Charles* XII. found in the field of battle at *Pultawa*, all broken to pieces by the cannon ſhot: the Czar was on the ſame horſe he rode upon at that battle, attended by the generals who had the greateſt ſhare in the ſucceſs. This day's ſolemnity ended with great rejoicings over the whole city, and illuminations the whole night long.

The *Porte* renews the treaty with *Ruſſia*.

In the beginning of this year, the *Ottoman Porte* renewed and confirmed the thirty years truce with *Ruſſia*, notwithſtanding all the endeavours the King of *Sweden* uſed to hinder it.

On the 5th of *February*, the *Britiſh* Ambaſſador extraordinary Mr. *Whiteworth*, had a public audience of the Czar, in a very ſolemn manner, where all ſatisfaction was given his majeſty, for the affront his Ambaſſador met with at *London* two years before.

But

BOOK IX.

General *Gordon* ordered to the frontiers of *Hungary*.

But to return a little into *Poland*, about the end of *November*, General *Goltz* ordered Major-general *Gordon*, with a body of about four thouſand foot and dragoons into *Ziepts*, on the frontiers of *Hungary*, both to obſerve the King of *Sweden*'s motions at *Bender*, and to reduce Prince *Lubomirſky* and *Starroſta Spitsky*, who had got together a body of betwixt five and ſix thouſand horſe and foot of different nations, in oppoſition to King *Auguſtus*, and the confederacy of *Sandomir*. General *Gordon* on the 17th of *January* early, forced the paſs of *Ziepts* without loſing a man, the enemy abandoning it on his approach: after which, he marched and took poſſeſſion of *Cabowlia*, the chief town of the country; which the enemy alſo abandoned on his advance. Then he blocked up the caſtle, having no artillery wherewith to force it. After this, he marched with all his troops, leaving only three companies before the caſtle of *Ziepts*, and attacked the enemy on the 9th, near *Kyſmark*, where the Prince, together with the horſe, abandoned the foot, who had hardly fired the firſt fire, till they threw down their arms and begged for mercy. The Prince left the country and went to *Vienna*, and put himſelf under the protection of the Emperor; the horſe retired to *Kyſmark*. The General attacked them next day, but without

Reduces Prince *Lubomirſky*, &c.

without much bloodſhed, they ſurrendering alſo at diſcretion: he cauſed take from them their ſtandards, horſes and arms, allowing the men to go into *Poland*, as he had done the foot before, not caring to keep ſo many unneceſſary mouths, who were good for nothing, but to conſume the proviſions; and Prince *Lubomirsky* having but little in the country, where he had played the maſter, or rather the tyrant for ſome years before.

General *Noſticz* takes *Elbing* by ſurprize.

Much about this time Lieutenant-general *Noſticz* took *Elbing* by ſurprize, being quartered about the town, with a body of five thouſand *Ruſſians*, moſtly foot: having prepared ſtorming ladders, he marched and attacked the town before day in three different places, being in good underſtanding with the burghers. The commandant after a faint reſiſtance, cauſed beat the chamade, and ſurrendered at diſcretion, very few of his men being killed; and not above fifty of the *Ruſſians* killed and wounded. *Elbing* is a large town, not ill fortified, and would take at leaſt betwixt three and four thouſand men to garriſon it right; whereas the commandant had not above five hundred. This town was taken on the 7th of *February*, and was the only one belonging to *Poland* the *Swedes* had kept poſſeſſion of.

BOOK IX.

The ſalt mines near *Cracow*.

The Czarowich having paſſed the winter at *Cracow*, viſited in the month of *March* all the curioſities about the town; amongſt others, the ſalt mines at *Borhnia* and *Vilitzky*; which are exceeding curious, being of a vaſt depth, where ſome hundreds of families live without ſcarcely ever ſeeing ſun or moon. The ſalt is very good, as clear as cryſtal, and ſerves almoſt all *Poland*.

There were this year quartered in and about *Cracow*, about ſixteen thouſand foot and dragoons, under the command of General *Goltz*; but a miſunderſtanding happening betwixt him and Prince *Menzekoff* about the diſtribution of the quarters; on the 10th of *February*, one of his Czariſh majeſty's General-adjutants, brought an order from the Czar himſelf, to Major-general *Gordon*, to arreſt General *Goltz* (who happened to be at that time in *Lubowlia* viſiting the quarters) and to ſend him, under the guard of a Captain and fifty dragoons, to *Moſcow*. Tho' this was a command the Major-general had no pleaſure in, yet his Czariſh majeſty's orders muſt be obeyed; he therefore went forthwith, together with the Czar's General-adjutant, to General *Goltz*'s quarters, and intimated his orders. The General was exceedingly ſurprized at firſt; but then conſidering he had done nothing to deſerve ſuch treatment, he became eaſy,

eaſy, and after dinner ſet out from *Lubow-lia* to *Cracow*; and from thence the neareſt way through *Poland* to *Moſcow*, the command of the troops being conferred on General *Janus*, a *German*, lately entered into the ſervice, having formerly commanded the troops of the circles of *Franconia* and *Swabia*. BOOK IX.

General *Goltz* being carried to *Moſcow*, and kept under ſtrong confinement, inſiſted to be tried by a court-martial; whereupon, he was tranſported to St. *Petersburgh* in order thereto.

In the beginning of *July* a court was held, of which the High-admiral, *Apraxin*, was præſes; who at the ſame time was in no good underſtanding with Prince *Menzekoff*. General *Goltz* was acquitted by the court, there being not one ſingle point of the charge proved againſt him; which picqued *Menzekoff* to that degree, that he endeavoured to prevail with the Czar to cauſe hold another court-martial in the army, where he (Prince *Menzekoff*) ſhould preſide. General *Goltz* refuſed to ſubmit to it; giving for reaſon, that he had been already judged and acquitted; beſides, that Prince *Menzekoff* (his enemy) could at no time preſide in a court to judge him: however the Czar being difficulted betwixt a good officer, and his favourite, continued *Goltz*

BOOK IX. in arreſt this whole year, until the enſuing, that the *Porte* had ſet up the horſe-tail, and declared war againſt *Ruſſia*.

The Czar finding that he might ſtill have uſe for able commanders, ſent for General *Goltz*, and preſented him with a ſword out of his own hand; ordering him at the ſame time to repair to his command. General *Goltz* humbly thanked his majeſty for all his favours, told him his conſtitution was broke with fatigue, particularly, by this laſt long and hard confinement; and that he was reſolved to ſerve no more. The Czar unwilling to put further hardſhip upon him, cauſed pay him up all his arrears, and conduct him ſafe to *Dantzick*.

General *Goltz* leave the Czar's ſervice.

I thought it not improper to mention this treatment General *Goltz* met with, to ſhew how much a favourite, when he is not a man of honour, may abuſe his Prince's favour, ſo as to maltreat and even ruin his beſt ſervants: had it not been for the enſuing war with the *Turks*, 'tis hard to know but General *Goltz* might have been ſtill kept under confinement, and probably, at laſt might have been ſent to *Siberia*, where he would have ended his days in miſery; as Lieutenant-general *Heyn* had been ſent two years before. The General being at play with Prince *Menzekoff*, near *Smolenſko*, of whom he had gained about three or four thouſand

thouſand ducats: the Prince being picqued at his loſs, gave abuſive language to the General, who not being of an humour to bear it, took the Prince up, told him he was a gentleman, and did expect gentlemany ſatisfaction; but all he got by it, was to be ſent to *Siberia*, or ſome worſe place, where he was never more heard of. I am convinced the Czar was not in the knowledge of many of his favourite's actions of this nature, being a Prince of more humanity and honour, than to have connived at them. BOOK IX.

It is to be conſidered, that Lieutenant-general *Heyn* was not in the *Ruſſian* ſervice, but in that of *Poland*, under the Great-general of *Lithuania*.

In the great council held at *Warſaw* this year, betwixt the deputies of the republic and Prince *Dolgoruky*, the Czar's miniſter, ſeveral important points were tabled; amongſt others, the two millions and an half the Czar himſelf had promiſed to the republic, and which had not been paid: another article was, that no more *Ruſſian* troops ſhould continue in *Poland*, than the twelve thouſand ſtipulated. Then Prince *Dolgoruky*, the Czar's miniſter, inſiſted that Prince *Wieſnowitſky*, with many others of the ſenators, who had been engaged in the confederacy of *Warſaw*, ſhould be proceeded againſt as enemies and traitors to the King and

BOOK IX. and republic; for, that he could make it appear, that many of them as yet kept a correſpondence with the enemy. Then the deputies demanded that all the towns and forts the *Ruſſians* had made themſelves maſters of in *Volinia*, together with all the artillery and ammunition found in theſe places, ſhould be reſtored to the republic: to all which points and many more, no direct anſwer being made, they came to no concluſion.

As to the twelve thouſand *Swedes* in *Pomerania*, the Czar was reſolved to attack them in their own country; but the Emperor, *England* and *Holland*, foreſeeing that if the fire broke out in any part of *Germany*, it would be of advantage to the *French*, made remonſtrances to the Czar, diſſuading him from putting that deſign in execution: but the Czar judged it incumbent on him, to attack his enemies where-ever he could find them, unleſs the allies would engage that the *Swediſh* troops in *Pomerania*, ſhould not at any time hereafter, in any event, march into *Poland*, nor diſturb the King of *Denmark*'s dominions adjoining to *Germany*; which being agreed to, the following act of guarantee was entered into at the *Hague*.

Act of guarantee

'That ſeeing his Imperial majeſty, her 'majeſty the Queen of *Great Britain*, and 'their

between the Czar and other powers

'their high mightineſſes the States of *Holland*, judge it of the greateſt conſequence to 'preſerve the peace in and about the frontiers of *Germany*, and having made remonſtrances to the powers at war in the 'north for that effect; his Czariſh majeſty, 'together with his allies the kings of *Poland* and *Denmark*, had declared, that 'they were reſolved not to undertake any 'thing that could diſturb the peace of the 'empire; provided always, that the *Swediſh* troops in *Pomerania* ſhould no more return into *Poland*, nor attack the King of *Denmark*'s dominions, in and about the frontiers of *Germany*; and that the above-mentioned high allies and confederates 'ſhould guarantee the ſame; and further 'deſired, that the King of *Sweden*'s extraordinary envoy Mr. *Vanpalmquiſt*, ſhould 'acquaint the regency at *Stockholm*, and receive their orders thereupon; which being done, the ſaid regency declared, that 'it ſhould not fail on the part of *Sweden*, 'but that an exact neutrality ſhould be preſerved in the empire; that they promiſed 'and undertook for *Sweden*, that the troops 'in *Pomerania*, ſhould neither return into 'Poland, nor any way diſturb the dutchies of 'Sleſwick nor *Jutland*; provided at the ſame 'time the King of *Sweden* ſhould be ſecured that the *Daniſh* troops either on this

'ſide

BOOK IX. ‘ ſide the *Belts* or in *Jutland*, ſhould not ‘ diſturb nor moleſt the *Swediſh* dominions ‘ in *Germany*, or on its frontiers: to which ‘ all parties conſented.’ This act of neutrality was ſubſcribed at the *Hague* the 21ſt of *March* 1710 by the plenipotentiaries of all the powers concerned: there was a great deal more, but all centered in what is already ſaid.

About the middle of *May* the *Ruſſian* troops in *Ziepts* received orders to march into *Poland*, and to leave only a battalion of foot, commanded by a Lieutenant-colonel, in *Labowlia*. On the 13th of *June*, they joined General *Janus*, incamped near *Limberg* where they continued until the middle of *Auguſt*; about which time, Major-general *Gordon* received orders from the Czar to march down to *Royal-Pruſſia*, and take further orders there from King *Auguſtus*: his body being augmented with two regiments of foot and two of dragoons. He embarked with the foot, artilery, ammunition and baggage, on large flat bottomed boats on the *Viſtula*, and cauſed the dragoons march by land until they arrived at a ſmall town called *Meive*, within three leagues of *Marienburgh*, where King *Auguſtus* then kept his court, and where he was commanded to continue till further orders. He was neceſſitated to bring down the infantry by

General *Gordon* gets new orders.

by water, to ſhun the plague, which raged univerſally over all *Poland*. BOOK IX.

The Czar being returned from *Moſcow* to St. *Petersburgh*, orderd the High-admiral *Apraxin*, with a body of eighteen thouſand foot and dragoons, to march and beſiege *Wiburg*, capital of *Carelia*, a notable ſea-port, within the gulf of *Finland*. The Admiral came up before the town about the 3d of *April;* which he inveſted in form, and immediately attacked the ſuburbs that the beſieged had ſet fire to; which the *Ruſſians* extinguiſhed, and lodged a battalion in the ſame: they alſo took two ſhips which lay in the bay before the town. The Czar with the greateſt part of his fleet, came up before the place, both to block it up by ſea, and to tranſport the great artillery, ammunition and proviſions, which he had on board; the artillery, conſiſting of twenty-four great guns, twelve mortars, *&c.* The ſiege was carried on with vigour; ſo that ſufficient breaches being made, the Governor not willing to ſtand an aſſault, ſurrendered on honourable terms. But, after the garriſon had marched out, Admiral *Apraxin* cauſed arreſt them, for theſe following reaſons: *Firſt*, The Governor of St. *Petersburgh*, having ſent ſome years before, a light frigate, bearing a white flag, with letters to the priſoners at *Stockholm*, and to receive letters

The plague rages in *Poland*.

Wiburg ſurrenders.

BOOK IX. from the *Swedes* for theirs in *Ruſſia*, which had been often practiſed before; nevertheleſs, the *Swedes* made prize of the ſhip, tore to pieces the *Ruſſian* flag, and uſed not the officer, who commanded the frigate, and ſhip's crew, with common civility. *Secondly*, That in the beginning of the war, they had arreſted and made priſoner at *Stockholm* the *Ruſſian* miniſter, and ſeized on his effects and papers, contrary to the cuſtom of nations; that the Czar had relieved the *Swediſh* miniſter Mr. *Kniperorona*, on his parole, that Prince *Chilkow* the Czar's miniſter ſhould be relieved in exchange of him; which was not performed. *Thirdly*, That in the beginning of the war, all the *Ruſſian* merchants both at *Narva*, *Stockholm*, and over all *Sweden*, were not only arreſted, and their effects confiſcated, but themſelves forced to hard labour, on ſcanty diet, bad accomodation *&c.* ſo that many of them died.

The Admiral declared, that when the regency of *Sweden* had given ſatisfaction on theſe three grievances, the garriſon ſhould enjoy the benefit of the capitulation: at the ſame time, he allowed the ſick, wounded, women and children to go to *Abo*, or where they inclined.

Marſhal *Sheremetoff*, who had been all this time beſieging *Riga*, the plague raging both

both in town and camp, to ſuch a degree, that Lieutenant-general *Rentzel* and many more died of it; when he got accounts of the ſurrender of *Wiburg*, acquainted the Governor therewith, in hopes it would prevail with him to accept of terms: but he continued ſtill obſtinate, and did not offer to capitulate, until he was ſatisfied of the impoſſibility of obtaining ſuccours: then on the 10th of *July*, the Czarina's birth-day, he entered into terms, there happening an accident, which contributed very much thereto, *viz.* the blowing up of a magazine of powder under a baſtion of the town walls. The Marſhal inſtead of diminiſhing their conditions, granted them more then they demanded: for, his Czariſh majeſty promiſed over and above, to reſtore to the gentry who ſhould ſubmit to his dominion, all the eſtates which had been taken from them by the chamber of reduction in *Charles* the XI's. time.

Riga ſurrenders after great diſtreſſes; the plague in particular.

Of ſeven thouſand men, or thereabout, whereof the garriſon conſiſted at the beginning of the ſiege, ſcarce four thouſand marched out, the half whereof were ſick and wounded: all the *Livonians* of what quality ſoever were detained, not unvoluntarily, for they all with pleaſure ſubmitted to the Czar, and paid him homage in a moſt ſolemn

BOOK IX.

manner, which the Marſhal received in name of the Czar.

This Prince was expecting with impatience the accounts of the ſurrender, which he received with no ſmall pleaſure: he appointed a day of thankſgiving and publick rejoicing; after which Marſhal *Sheremetoff* laid ſiege to the important fort *Dunamunde*, which ſurrendered within fourteen days, the plague having deſtroyed more people than the batteries. Then, the Emperor gave his orders to beſiege *Pernaw*, then *Revel* and *Kexholm*: theſe ſieges did not continue long, the plague raging ſo exceſſively, that *Pernaw* ſurrendered on the 21ſt of *Auguſt* and *Kexholm* on the 19th of *September*, ſo that nothing remained more but *Revel;* which alſo capitulated on the 10th of *October*, moſt part of the garriſon and inhabitants being conſumed by the plague. The Czar to engage ſtill more and more the *Livonians*, after having reſtored to that nation their antient privileges, raiſed ſeveral regiments in that country, to be commanded by none but the gentry of the province.

Revel, Pernaw and *Kexholm*, ſurrender alſo.

King *Auguſtus* after the reduction of *Livonia* and *Carelia*, having all this time continued at *Marienburgh*, to ſhow how far theſe events were agreeable to him, cauſed invite many of the *Poliſh* ſenators, foreign miniſters, and General officers to an entertainment.

entertainment. He left *Marienburgh* about the middle of *October*, and repaired to the city of *Dantzick* where he paſſed the winter. The auxiliary troops under Major-general *Gordon*'s command, were aſſigned their quarters in and about *Quelchevia*, about thirty leagues above *Dantzick*, on the *Viſtula;* Lieutenant-general *Noſtits* together with his command, in the *Royal-Pruſſia;* the *Saxon* troops partly in *Lithuania*, (King *Auguſtus* being obliged to keep a body of twenty thouſand foot and horſe, near at hand to oppoſe the *Swedes*, in caſe they ſhould be obliged by their King's orders to march out of *Pomerania* into *Poland;* for he was not conſulted about their act of guarantee) the reſt of the *Saxon* troops, together with General *Janus*'s command, were quartered about *Cracow*, *Limberg* and on the frontiers of *Hungary*, to obſerve the motions of the King of *Sweden*, and the *Turks*.

The plague raged ſo exceſſively in *Poland* this year, that infinite numbers were carried off by it; particularly the *Poles*, whereof, not under an hundred thouſand were conſumed; and in *Courland*, there were not hands left to cut the down the harveſt; but ſuch good order was kept on the frontiers of *Ruſſia*, that the plague never entered that country: owing alſo in a great meaſure

BOOK IX.

measure to the exceſſive cold. Very few of the *Ruſſian* troops in *Poland* were infected, by reaſon that the *Ruſſians* had always a vaſt quantity of proviſions in ſtore, ſo that they had no occaſion to have any communication with the *Poles*.

The King of *Sweden* all this while was not idle at *Bender*; for, by his intrigues at the *Porte*, he brought matters ſo far, that the Sultan was at laſt prevailed with to break with *Ruſſia*, and declare war againſt the Czar, confined his Ambaſſador Mr. *Ctulſtoy* in the ſeven towers, and gave orders to the prime Viſier to march with an army of two hundred thouſand *Turks*, beſides *Tartars*, which might amount to forty thouſand more, againſt *Ruſſia*.

The Sultan breaks with the Czar. 1711.

The Czar was no more in pain about the *Swedes*; the King of *Denmark* having attacked them in *Schonen*, tho' unſucceſsfully, could nevertheleſs make ſufficient diverſion on that ſide: the Czar, I ſay, thought himſelf more than able to deal with the *Turks*; yet, to omit nothing, he wrote ſeveral letters to the Grand Seignior; whereby he made appear, that he had religiouſly obſerved the treaties betwixt him and the ſublime *Porte*, and had given no occaſion to the enſuing rupture; but theſe letters were never delivered to the Sultan, ſo that the Czar could get no return: then to make matters

His letters not delivered to the *Porte*.

matters more eaſy, he had gain'd the Hoſpodar of *Muldavia*, who being of the *Greek* church, thought it more like a Chriſtian, to ſubject his country to a powerful monarch profeſſing the ſame faith, whereby likeways, he might become hereditary ſovereign of *Muldavia*, under the protection of the Czar, than to hold it after the precarious manner he did. On this account he joined the Czar with all his force; and *Muldavia* being a plentiful country, his army could be furniſhed with proviſions and neceſſaries. Accordingly, in the month of *March* 1711, his Czariſh majeſty, having left the command of his armies in *Livonia* and *Carelia* to Prince *Menzekoff*, marched with an army of twenty four thouſand foot, including his guards, towards the frontiers of *Poland*, where he was joined with what more foot he had in that country, and with all his dragoons to the number of thirty thouſand more; where we ſhall leave him and return a little into *Turky*.

BOOK IX.

He marches to the frontiers of *Poland*.

Mr. *Ctolſtoy*, before the Grand Seignior had determined on the war with *Ruſſia*, ſpared no means to thwart the *Swediſh* negotiations, and to engage the *Porte* to continue in the intereſt of his maſter, by cauſing the King of *Sweden* to remove out of the *Turkiſh* dominions; whoſe longer reſidence, he ſaid

BOOK IX.

said, would inevitably engage the *Porte* in a dangerous war.

The Divan having taken this affair into their ſerious conſideration, concluded, that the Grand Seignior was obliged to protect the King of *Sweden*, ſince that Prince had put himſelf under the powerful protection of the ſublime *Porte*; but that it was contrary to the alcoran to declare war on that Prince's account, againſt the Czar of *Ruſſia*, unleſs he had previouſly broke the peace concluded betwixt the ſublime *Porte* and him, by having committed hoſtilities, or invaded any part of the Sultan's dominions; which did not as yet appear.

The King of *Sweden* mortified with the meaſures of the Divan.

This reſolution put the King of *Sweden* out of all hopes, until the prime Viſier *Ali-Baſſa Zurlu* was depoſed, diſgraced, and baniſhed, on the 15th of *June* 1710, on account of his having been corrupted by the Czar's miniſter, and other mal-practices; *Kiuparliſade* was declared prime Viſier, who being of too regular a conduct, continued in that great office but a very few days till he was depoſed, and ſent back to his government in *Negropont*.

But *Baltazi Mehemet Baſſa* having ſucceeded *Kiuparliſade*, the King of *Sweden* began to conceive better hopes, and omitted nothing that lay in his power to create a miſunderſtanding betwixt the two empires. It being

Creates a difference

the

practice, that when a new Viſier is named, all the foreign miniſters, out of reſpect to his highneſs, demand an audience to wiſh him joy; the *Ruſſian* miniſter deſiring to be admitted firſt, was told, that of a long ſtanding, the *French* miniſter, as being the antienteſt ally of the *Porte*, was commonly admitted firſt, the *Porte* always giving the title of Emperor to the ſovereigns of *France*. BOOK IX. between the *Porte* and *Ruſſia*.

The *Ruſſian* Ambaſſador replyed, that the ſovereigns of *France* were not conſidered as Emperors amongſt the reſt of the ſovereigns in *Europe*, but only as Kings; that his maſter had a preferable title to Emperor, as being ſovereign of all *Ruſſia*; beſides, that the rank was due to him as Ambaſſador extraordinary. This occaſioned the Divan, to look into the treaties concluded betwixt the *Ottoman Porte* and *Ruſſia*; whereby they found, that there had never been given any other title to the ſovereigns of *Ruſſia*, than that of Czar; ſo that he was told that he ſhould be admitted after the *French* Ambaſſador.

Mr. *Ctolſtoy* entered a proteſtation, but to no purpoſe, and cauſed at the ſame time acquaint the prime Viſier, that by theſe means he ſhould be deprived of the honour of ſeeing him. The *Poles*, *Tartars*, and all who eſpouſed the intereſt of the King of *Sweden*, told the Viſier, that the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſa-

BOOK IX.

dor's proceedings in this point, were haughty and a deſpiſing of his perſon; which with the other complaints given in againſt the *Ruſſians*, ſuch as their purſuing the *Swedes* and *Poles* over the *Turkiſh* frontiers, made the *Porte* reſolve to declare war againſt *Ruſſia*, and to put the Ambaſſador in arreſt.

The prime Viſier at the head of a great army.

After which the prime Viſier, having given the neceſſary orders, left *Conſtantinople* in the month of *March* 1711, to put himſelf at the head of the *Ottoman* army, which was aſſembled near *Adrianople*, from whence he decamped, directing his march towards the *Danube*.

The Czar marches contrary to the advice of his generals.

The Czar after having got all his troops together, conſiſting of about fifty thouſand foot and dragoons, directed his march from the frontierts of *Poland* to *Jaſſay* the capital of *Muldavia*, where he continued ſome days, taking meaſures with the Hoſpodar about proviſions for the army. From *Jaſſay* he continued his march further down, on the north ſide of the river *Pruth*, where he arrived in the beginning of *June*.

But to do juſtice to the *Ruſſian* generals, Marſhal *Sheremetoff*, *Allart*, *Repnin* and *Galitzin*, they did all that lay in their power to diſſuade the Czar from entering too far into the enemy's country; giving for reaſon, that it was always good and neceſſary, to ſecure a ſafe retreat; for they knew that the

the *Turks* and *Tartars* together, would overpower them with numbers, and by that means make a retreat difficult. But the Czar, depending on the goodneſs of his troops, told them that there was no uſe for a retreat, and ſo had no regard to their advice; but on the contrary, firmly believed, that with that army, he was able to drive the *Turks* to the gates of *Conſtantinople*. Thus he marched along the river, over which he allowed the enemy to paſs, without ever offering to diſpute it, which was the Czar's firſt overſight in this expedition; the next was his truſting to the *Muldavians* and *Wallachians* for proviſions. The *Ruſſian* armies formerly, when they marched againſt *Turks* and *Tartars*, carried always proviſions during the whole campaign; which was on this occaſion neglected. The Czar found this miſtake when too late, for no ſooner had the *Turkiſh* army croſſed the *Pruth*, than both *Muldavians* and *Wallachians* carried all their proviſions to them, and minded the Czar no further; ſo that in a little time we ſhall find this great Emperor in as bad a ſituation, as the King of *Sweden* had been in two years before at *Pultawa*.

The *Turks* advanced and attacked the *Ruſſians* with their *Janiſſaries* and *Sphais*, two different times, but were repulſed with conſiderable loſs; yet at laſt, proviſions

The *Turks* twice repulſed.

BOOK IX. beginning altogether to fail, there was no other remedy, but to hazard a deciſive battle; wherein, if the Czar proved victorious all was well; but if not, he had ordered ten thouſand of his beſt dragoons, together with his guards, all on horſeback, to make his retreat as well as he could.

The Czar in great anxiety.

After matters were thus diſpoſed, he retired to his tent to take a little reſt, but could get none; his thoughts were ſo taken up with the deſperate ſituation of his affairs, occaſioned by his own forwardneſs. He reflected that his great endeavours in poliſhing his people, would be now rendered ineffectual; that the flower of his army, which in a manner from nothing, he had by his activity, prudence and management, brought upon a footing, nothing inferior to the beſt diſciplined troops in *Europe*, together with himſelf, were all like to be ſwallowed up in a moment.

In the mean time his principal generals, together with the Vice-chancellor *Shafferoff*, held a council amongſt themſelves, where the Czarina, being in the army, was preſent. It was adviſed to enter into a treaty with the prime Viſier, and to offer him a ſum of money, amounting to about two hundred thouſand rubles, which they believed would diſpoſe him to make up matters, by granting them ſuch conditions,

A propoſal of bribing the prime Viſier.

as

as he was impowered to conclude peace upon: after which, the Czarina went into the Czar's tent, (who was not aſleep, thro' anxiety and vexation) to make him the propoſal, which with ſome difficulty he went into, deſpairing of ſucceſs. BOOK IX.

The *Turks* are great lovers of money, and will venture a bow-ſtring at any time, for a round ſum. *Shafferoff* was immediately diſpatched to the Viſier, with this preſent in his hand, conſiſting of jewels, gold and money. The Viſier at firſt told him, that the Czar with his army muſt ſurrender themſelves priſoners of war: *Shafferoff* aſſured him, that the Czar his maſter was fully determined at that inſtant to give him battle, if the terms he came to offer were refuſed. The Viſier, having already attacked the *Ruſſians*, twice unſucceſsfully, thought it ſafer to make peace on the Sultan's terms, and get this ſum by the bargain, than truſt to the uncertainty of a battle. He cauſed immediately proclaim a truce for ſome hours, within which time the treaty was concluded, and ſigned in very few articles: the three chief ones were, *Firſt*, That the Czar ſhould evacuate *Poland*, and allow none of his troops on any pretext whatſoever, to continue longer in that kingdom; that he ſhould cauſe march his troops out of the ſouthern parts within a month, and out of the northern

A treaty concluded.

BOOK IX.

ern within three months. In the ſecond place, that he ſhould reſtore *Aſoph* to the Grand Seignior, with all the other forts betwixt it and the *Crimea*, viz. *Meius*, *Taganaroge*, &c. in the ſame condition they were when the Czar took them from the *Turks*, with artillery, ammunition, proviſions, *&c.* *Thirdly*, To deſtroy the ſhipping at *Aſoph*.

The King of *Sweden*, who had ſet out poſt from *Bender*, came not up to the *Turkiſh* camp until all was concluded, to his great misfortune, and no leſs mortification. He went ſtraight to Mr. *Poniatoſky*'s tent, who with a diſmal countenance, told him what had happened; and that he had miſſed an opportunity, he was never like to have again in his power. From *Poniatoſky*'s tent, he went in a rage to the prime Viſier's, where he made a buſtle for a while, but to no purpoſe: this Prince was infatuated, for had he been with the *Turks* from the beginning, and before they made their attacks on the *Ruſſian* army, he with his few *Swedes* had given them ſo good example, that undoubtedly he would either have periſhed himſelf, or undone the enemy.

The Czar's error in deſpiſing the *Turks*.

Peter the Great, in this expedition, beſides the overſights already mentioned, deſpiſed the *Turks* as much as *Charles* XII. had

had done the *Ruſſians* ſome years before; but without reaſon: for the *Turks* are no deſpicable people, but on the contrary, a valorous and bold nation; and, tho' they have not got into ſo good a method as the Chriſtians, which is not to be wiſhed they ſhould; yet, having ſuch numbers of men, they have often (when commanded by their Sultans in perſon, and ſometimes by their Viſiers, when men of experience) routed and cut to pieces the Chriſtian armies; ſo that no General could have been excuſed in committing ſuch overſights. Abſolute monarchs, who have only GOD to anſwer to, may do as they incline; tho' at the ſame time it is not in their power to ſcreen themſelves from the cenſure of the world. BOOK IX.

This hitherto great and prudent Emperor, being on this occaſion reduced to the laſt extremity, reſolves to put all at ſtake; where, ten to one but he with his army (good as it was) had been deſtroyed.

But even in this, his good fortune (which had been his faithful companion all along) did not abandon him. The prime Viſier being no ſoldier, but a weak intereſted man, ſtruck up a peace ſtupidly with him for the ſake of a bribe, not much exceeding fifty thouſand pounds *Sterling:* the Czar would have given ſome millions to have got off at

ſo

BOOK IX. ſo eaſy a rate. This peace was owing (humanly ſpeaking) to the ignorance and avarice of the prime Viſier; but 'tis more reaſonable to aſcribe it to an over-ruling power, who changes the nature of things, and has relief at hand even in the moſt deſperate circumſtances; ſo that no cauſe, tho' ever ſo low, ought to be deſpaired of, provided it be founded upon honour and juſtice. If the prime Viſier had been a man of more knowledge and experience, it would have been as eaſy for him on this occaſion, to have made peace betwixt the Czar and the King of *Sweden*, as betwixt him and the Grand Seignior, and to have got all the *Swediſh* provinces reſtored; nay, even his beloved St. *Petersburgh* itſelf: for without all doubt, the Czar would have been obliged to go into all his terms, or have been with his whole army (which did not then conſiſt of twenty-four thouſand ſound men) loſt to all intents and purpoſes; having an army to deal with of no leſs than two hundred thouſand *Turks* and *Tartars*.

The Czar marches back to the frontiers of *Poland*.

After this treaty was ſigned, the *Ruſſian* army being in a ſhort time furniſhed, even by the *Turks* themſelves, (who ſhewed them great humanity, allowing them proviſions and all manner of neceſſaries) marched off, drums beating and colours flying: the Czar

Czar did not halt much till he arrived on the frontiers of *Poland*. The Hoſpodar of *Wallachia*, Prince *Cantomir*, being obliged to leave his own country went to *Ruſſia*, where he has continued in the Emperor's ſervice ever ſince. This peace was concluded on the 21ſt of *July* 1711, the honour of which being wholly attributed to the Czarina, *Catharine*, entirely gained her the army, and the generality of the people. With this the Czar was infinitely pleaſed, tho' at the ſame time he knew very well how matters had gone; for certainly the generals, together with the Vice-chancellor *Shafferoff*, had been the main-ſprings that directed the machine: they advanced their money with the Czarina's jewels, which ſtruck the prime Viſier blind all of a ſudden. BOOK IX.

The Czar, after his retreat from the *Pruth*, having got the length of the frontiers of *Poland*, his firſt care was, after ordering his troops into quarters of refreſhment, to cauſe quickly recruit his regiments; for this expedition had coſt him upwards of twenty-four thouſand men.

Then he marched by *Warſaw* to *Elbing*, at which place he arrived on the 12th of *September*; where he reſted only a few days; and after having ordered his troops into their ſeveral quarters, continued his

BOOK IX.

journey towards *Carlesbath*, with a reſolution to make uſe of the waters: then paſſed through *Dreſden* the 20th, and the 22d arrived at the waters, which he uſed with tolerable good ſucceſs. During his continuance at that place, he negotiated ſome affairs with the *Pruſſian* miniſter; after which he returned to *Dreſden*, and from that he went to *Torgow* on the 28th of *October*, where the Queen of *Poland* had every thing prepared for celebrating the Czarowich's marriage with Princeſs *Charlotte Chriſtine*, daughter to Duke *Louis Rudolph* of *Brunſwick Wolfenbuttle*, and ſiſter to the Empreſs of *Germany*. Some days after the ſolemnity was over, the new married couple took their journey for *Wolfenbuttle*, and the Czar paſſed through *Sileſia* into the *Royal Pruſſia*, where he viewed the troops commanded by Lieutenant-general *Bower*. On the 8th of *November* he arrived at *Thorn*, where he with his whole court embarked for *Elbing*; at which place he was waited on, among others, by the famous Prince *Ragotſky*, who had come for that purpoſe from *Dantzick*: from *Elbing* he paſſed through *Koningsberg* and *Menil*, to *Riga*, where he celebrated the feſtival of the Apoſtle St. *Andrew*, patron of *Ruſſia*: from *Riga* he went to *Revel*, where he continued ſome days, and ordered the fortifications to be repaired: from *Revel* he

Negotiates affairs at *Carlesbath*.

Celebrates the feſtival of St. *Andrew* at *Riga*.

he continued his journey to St. *Peters-burgh*, his favourite town; at which place he had reſolved to continue ſome time, in order to take a view of the troops, the fortifications, and the fleet.

His deſign of having a miniſter at the dyet of the empire oppoſed.

The Czar being become peaceable poſſeſſor of *Livonia*, expreſſed a deſire of being admitted amongſt the princes of the empire of *Germany*, by virtue of that dutchy, and to have a miniſter at the dyet; but the princes of the empire oppoſed it, aſſigning amongſt other reaſons, that the Czar of *Ruſſia* was too powerful a Prince to have any concern in the dyet of the empire.

New intrigues of the King of *Sweden* in *Turky*.

To return to *Turky*; the ſcene there was much changed: the King of *Sweden* by his intrigues, and theirs in his intereſt, had perſuaded the Sultan that the Viſier had betrayed both the *Ottoman* empire and the King, whom he had excluded out of the treaty, and that the Czar had not fulfilled the articles thereof. Hereupon the Sultan ordered the prime Viſier to repair to *Conſtantinople*, which from time to time he delayed, being informed of the King of *Sweden*'s practices againſt him; but at laſt he was obliged to obey, and as he came near *Conſtantinople*, the Sultan's orders were ſignified to him, *viz.* that he was depoſed from his dignity, which he had enjoyed about a year: it was conferred on the Baſſa, *Juſſuf*,

BOOK IX. Aga of the *Janiſſaries*, himſelf ſent into baniſhment to the iſland *Metalin*, and all his goods confiſcated.

After this, the King of *Sweden* began to recover hopes. The Cham of *Tartary* repaired to *Conſtantinople*, where he had frequent conferences with the Sultan, who reſolved a-new to declare war againſt *Ruſſia*, unleſs the Czar went immediately into the three following articles.

Firſt, That the Czar ſhould put in execution the articles of the treaty on the *Pruth*; that within a month's time he ſhould evacuate *Poland*, and neither directly nor indirectly have any concern with the affairs of that kingdom.

Secondly, That the King of *Sweden* returning to his dominions, under what convoy the Sultan ſhould think fit, the Czar ſhould not order any of his troops into *Poland*, under any pretext whatſoever; for in that caſe he ſhould be oppoſed by all the force of the *Ottoman* empire.

Thirdly, That the Czar ſhould not concern himſelf any way with the *Poliſh Coſſacks*, nor theſe under the Cham of *Tartary*; that in the terms of the peace, he ſhould inſtantly demoliſh *Taganaroge* and reſtore *Aſoph*.

The *Ruſſian* hoſtages at the *Porte* oppoſed to theſe the three following articles:

Firſt,

First, That the King of *Sweden* ſhould inſtantly leave the *Turkiſh* dominions.

Secondly, That the *Porte* ſhould remain ſatisfied with what was already ſtipulated, in regard to the *Poliſh* and *Ruſſian Coſſacks*, in the *Ukraine*.

Thirdly, That if the King of *Sweden*, after his return to his dominions, ſhould march an army into *Poland*, the *Porte* could not not take it amiſs, that the Czar oppoſed force with force.

Theſe demands with the anſwers, became the ſubject of a long negotiation, in which the ambaſſadors of *Great Britain* and *Holland* became mediators. This ſecond treaty was concluded and ſigned on the 15th of *April* 1712.

New articles agreed to between the Czar and the *Porte*, 1712.

The ſubſtance of it was this: 'That 'ſince after the treaty of peace concluded 'betwixt the ſublime *Porte* and the Czar 'of *Ruſſia*, ſome differences had ariſen; 'both parties had agreed, that Sir *Robert* 'Sutton and Mr. *James Collier* ambaſſadors 'from the Queen of *Great Britain*, and 'the States-general of the united provinces, 'reſiding at the *Ottoman Porte*, ſhould be 'deſired to take on them the mediation of 'theſe differences; and their excellencies 'having conſented thereto, the following 'treaty is agreed to, after ſeveral confe-'rences to that effect, betwixt us, the mi-

'niſters

BOOK IX.

'nisters and plenipotentiaries of his Czarish 'majesty, Baron *Peter Schafferoff* Vice-'chancellor, and Count *Michael Sheremetoff* Major-general, on the one part; and 'his excellency *Jussuf Bassa*, prime Visier 'to the Sultan, on the other part, in the 'following articles.'

First, That thirty days after the date hereof, his Czarish majesty should cause all his troops withdraw out of the southern parts of *Poland*; and that three months time should be allowed to withdraw his troops from the more remote places of the kingdom; after which no *Russians* were to remain within the said dominions, under any pretext whatsoever; and that his Czarish majesty should in no shape meddle or concern himself with the *Polish* government; but in case the King of *Sweden* should enter with an army into *Poland*, with a view to attack *Russia*, that then the Czar might march with his army into *Poland* and attack his enemies, where after a battle fought, the *Swedes* should quit *Poland*, the *Russians* should equally at the same time evacuate that kingdom; in this case the *Porte* shall not look upon it as an infringement of the treaty.

Secondly, That when it should be thought proper that the King of *Sweden* should return to his dominions, the Grand Seignior should

ſhould be judge of his rout through what countries, without ſettling either the time, or the manner, (they behaving as becometh) even tho' it were through ſome parts of *Ruſſia*, and that the *Ottoman* troops, after having eſcorted the King into his own country, on their return ſhould meet with no diſturbance.

Thirdly, The *Coſſacks* ſhould content themſelves with their antient limits, and make no encroachment on each other, nor on the *Tartars*; and that if any abuſes be committed by either ſide, they ſhould be duly puniſhed.

Fourthly, As the town of *Aſoph* is ſituated on the extremity of the *Ottoman* empire, and *Chircaſky* on the extremity of *Ruſſia*, no fort ſhould be built by either ſide, and what is already built ſhould be demoliſhed; but that the Sultan, if he thinks fit, may repair the fort on the other ſide of the *Tanais*, oppoſite to *Aſoph*, called *Petropolis*.

Fifthly, That as in the articles of peace on the *Pruth*, it was agreed that *Aſoph* ſhould be reſtored in the condition it was in when the Czar took it; and as at that time there were ſixty braſs guns, which were tranſported to *Moſcow*, that theſe guns be reſtored or an equivalent for them.

Sixthly,

BOOK IX.

Sixthly, That in conſequence of the ſaid treaty, the fort *Caminick* and the caſtle built on the mouth of the *Samar*, remain demoliſhed, and that neither ſide repair nor build any new fort in theſe places.

Seventhly, That this peace ſhould continue during the ſpace of twenty-five years, and be exactly obſerved by both parties. Theſe articles were ſigned, in preſence of the Ambaſſadors mediators, by *Juſſuf Baſſa*, the prime Viſier for the Grand Seignior; and by *Peter Shafferoff*, and *Michael Sheremetoff*, plenipoentiaries for the Czar.

It may be eaſily ſuppoſed, that this treaty was heartily gone into by both ſides, from the orders his Czariſh majeſty gave to his troops in *Volinia*, commanded by Marſhal *Sheremetoff*, to leave *Poland* and retire into the *Ukraine*; and of thoſe under General *Renn*, a part was ordered into *Livonia*, and the reſt to march into *Pomerania*, where the Czar with the reſt of the allies had undertaken the ſiege of *Stralſund*. The Sultan's ſatisfaction appeared in his letter to the Baſſa of *Bender*, wherein he advances him to the charge of *Seraſkier*, or Generaliſſimo over his troops in *Romellia* and *Uſu*, with orders for ſuch a number under his command, to conduct the King of *Sweden* through *Poland* to his own dominions, acquainting him at the ſame time with the peace

laſt

laſt concluded; as alſo that he expected an Ambaſſador from *Poland*, with whom he was to confer on the quickeſt and ſafeſt way, for the King's paſſage. BOOK IX.

This peace however continued but a few months; the King of *Sweden* with his partiſans found means to excite a new revolution at the *Porte*, and to determine the Sultan to cauſe march a great force with him into *Poland*. The King of *Sweden* raiſes a new ſtir at the *Porte*.

Prince *Menzekoff* was about this time in *Pomerania*, with a body of about fifteen thouſand *Ruſſians*, where he was to join the *Daniſh* and *Saxon* troops, in order to attack the iſland of *Rugen*, *Stralſund* and *Stetin*; which laſt was already inveſted, by eight thouſand of the *Ruſſian* troops. The Czar marched in perſon into *Pomerania* with a regiment of his guards; and as they were on the point of attacking *Rugen*, they got information, that General *Stenbuck* was landed in that iſland, with a body of ten thouſand *Swedes*, which put a ſtop to that deſign. Then the Czar, leaving the command of his troops to King *Auguſtus*, went incognito to *Berlin*, where he conferred with the King of *Pruſſia*, who had all this time continued neuter: from *Berlin* he went to *Dreſden*, and from that to *Carleſbath*, where he made uſe of the waters, as The Czar goes incognito to *Berlin*.

BOOK IX.

he had done before, with ſucceſs. During his abſence, General *Stenbuck* marched from *Rugen* with the *Swediſh* troops to *Stralſund;* where, after having exhorted the burghers, with two thouſand men he left in ſaid place, to ſtand to their defence in caſe they were attacked, he directed his march towards *Mecklinburgh*, where he took poſſeſſion of *Roſtok*. King *Auguſtus* with his *Saxon* and *Ruſſian* troops marched after him, and took poſſeſſion of *Guſtraw*, and uſed all diligence to join the *Daniſh* troops, who had alſo marched from *Holſtein* into *Mecklinburgh*, in order all of them together to fall upon the *Swedes;* but General *Stenbuck* to prevent their conjunction, marched and attacked the *Danes* at *Gadebuſh* the 14th of *December*, where he gave them a total overthrow, notwithſtanding they were advantageouſly poſted. After which the *Ruſſian* and *Saxon* troops joined, in order to diſpute *Stenbuck*'s paſſage through *Pomerania* into *Poland*, which they judged would be his next deſign, in order to facilitate the King of *Sweden* and *Staniſlaus* their return into *Poland*, to give life to their parties; but General *Stenbuck*, who had other views, marched towards *Jutland*, and quartered his troops in *Holſtein*, according to the inſtructions he

General *Stenbuck* beats the *Danes*.

he had received from the regency at *Stockholm*; where we ſhall leave him, and return to *Turky*.

End of the Ninth Book.

THE

THE HISTORY OF *PETER* the *GREAT*, EMPEROR of *RUSSIA*.

BOOK X.

WHILST the Czar was uſing his beſt endeavours to reduce the *Swedes*, and force them into a peace, affairs took a new turn in *Turky*. *Staroſta Grudzinſky*, who had retired into the Grand Seignior's dominions after the King of *Sweden*, made an irruption into *Poland* at the head of five thouſand *Poles*, adherents of King *Staniſlaus*, with other troops of different nations, and pierced ſo far into the country without being diſcovered, that he came into the Woywodeſhip of *Kaliſch*; where at *Piſdry*, he fell upon Lieutenant-general *Bower*'s regiment, commanded by Colonel *Theodore*

BOOK X.

Theodore Gordon; and tho' the Colonel did all that could be expected in oppoſing the enemy, yet he was forced to retire with the loſs of two thirds of his regiment. *Grudzinſky*, puffed up with this ſucceſs, ſtill advances further into the country, which gave time to Lieutenant-general *Bower* who was then in *Pomerania*, to march with all diligence with two thouſand dragoons into the Woywodeſhip of *Poſin*, where he was joined by ſome ſtandards from the Crown-general, which amounted in whole to three or four thouſand men, and fell upon *Grudzinſky* at *Kruterſhein*, where he overcame him, and ſo diſperſed his corps, that he was forced, together with a few officers, to eſcape into *Sileſia*. This expedition was concerted by the King of *Sweden*, to ſatisfy the Grand Seignior, that the *Ruſſian* troops had not as yet fully evacuated *Poland*, agreeable to the laſt treaty of peace.

Bower beats *Grudzinſky*.

Upon this the Grand Seignior, by the perſuaſion of the Cham of *Tartary*, and the King of *Sweden*'s agents at the *Porte*, declares war a-new againſt the *Ruſſians*. The prime Viſier *Juſſuf Baſſa* was depoſed, and ſent into exile to the iſland of *Rhodes*; *Soliman Baſſa* was put in his place. The *Ruſſian* Ambaſſador, with the other plenipotentiaries, were ſent to the ſeven towers.

War declared again by the *Turks*.

Some

Some time after, the Grand Seignior repaired to *Adrianople*, in order to aſſemble his troops, and to march in perſon at the head of his army. But before he proceeded further, he would have the King of *Sweden* to leave his dominions and return to his own, to make a diverſion, by attacking the *Ruſſians* on that quarter; for which end he ſent a perſon of diſtinction to intimate his pleaſure to him; but the King declared in poſitive terms, that he would not depart until he had an interview with the Sultan, that he might ſatisfy him of his good intentions towards the *Ottoman* empire, and to concert together of the propereſt meaſures to bring the Czar to reaſon. This anſwer was both ill reported, and as ill taken: thoſe in the *Ruſſian* intereſt gave the Sultan to underſtand, that the King of *Sweden* deſigned to give him the law in his own country; which obliged the Grand Seignior, by the advice of the Mufti, to ſend a ſecond order, that the King of *Sweden* ſhould inſtantly depart; and in caſe of refuſal, to take his perſon by force, and bring him dead or alive to *Adrianople*.

BOOK X.

The King of *Sweden* refuſes to leave *Turky*.

The King of *Sweden*, tho' he had very ſoon accounts of this laſt order, did not believe that the *Turks* would go to that extremity; but he was miſtaken, and as every body knows what happened to him at *Bender* *,

BOOK X.

*Bender**, there is no use for enlarging upon it here. If war had not been already declared, it had not been done at this time; but the *Turk* thought his honour concerned: nevertheless, the *Ottoman* ministry were rather for peace, and just about this time, got the accounts that the Czar had withdrawn his troops from *Elbing*, and restored it to *Poland*; which, with the King of *Sweden*'s obstinacy, so softned the Sultan, that he entered into negotiations with the *Russian* plenipotentiary, and settled matters as before, with little or no additions, or amendments: for all that the *Turks* had to object, was that the Czar still kept some troops in *Poland*, particularly at *Thorn* and *Elbing*; which were by this time evacuated.

Peace again with the *Porte*.

During these transactions, the Czar was intent on putting an end to matters with
1713. General Count *Stenbuck*, who had by this time burnt the town of *Altena*, so that he did not leave one single house unconsumed; to the ruin of the poor inhabitants. *Altena* was but a small unfortified place, lying within half a mile of *Hamburgh*, but beginning

* The King of *Sweden* would needs keep out his unfortified house, tho' attacked by ten thousand men, till at last they set fire to it, and surrounded him as he was making his escape from the flames. Some say, their commission was only to take him prisoner.

ginning to flouriſh; ſo that it is generally believed, Count *Stenbuck* received a conſiderable ſum from the *Hamburghers*, who out of jealouſy wanted to deſtroy that place. The Czar was at *Hamburgh*, where (having conferred with the *Daniſh* General, *Wonſcholts*, about the operations of the campaign) he cauſed diſtribute ſome thouſands of rubles, amongſt the moſt neceſſitous of the inhabitants of *Altena*; promiſing beſides, to favour them in their commerce, not only in his ports in the *Baltick*, but alſo at *Archangel*.

The Czar being informed. that the *Swediſh* General, Count *Stenbuck*, had fortified the bridge at *Holingſtedt*, ordered Lieutenant-general *Bower* to march with four thouſand foot and dragoons, and drive the enemy from the bridge; which *Bower* did ſo ſucceſsfully, that after having obliged them to retire, he not only demoliſhed the fortification, but ruined the bridge. General *Stenbuck* finding himſelf ſurrounded with enemies (the *Ruſſians*, *Danes* and *Saxons*) began to repent of having entered ſo far into that country; and reſolved to croſs the *Eyder*, and return again into *Pomerania*: but being informed that the *Ruſſian* army lay in his way, ready to diſpute the paſſes with him, he altered that deſign, and entrenched his army to advantage, betwixt

BOOK X.

Frederickſtadt and *Tonningen:* but the Czar being reſolved to allow him no time, marched in perſon, at the head of eight thouſand of his troops, attacked *Frederickſtadt* on the 12th of *February*, and after a good reſiſtance, he made himſelf maſter of the place, it being fortified only with a breaſt-work and palliſadoes. The *Ruſſians* were twice repulſed, and loſt a good many men; but at the third attack they carried the place, where they took four hundred priſoners, *&c.*

Count *Stenbuck* much ſtraitned.

General *Stenbuck* finding himſelf reduced to the laſt extremity, and no ways able to give battle to the enemy, had no other recourſe, but to perſuade Colonel *Wolf* to give him poſſeſſion of *Tonningen*, where he lay encamped under the cannon, expecting ſuccours from *Sweden;* but in vain, the *Ruſſians* and their allies had encloſed him, that he ſcarcely could get a courier ſent to the regency at *Stockholm* to inform them of his ſituation.

About the end of *February*, the Czar parted with the King of *Denmark*, leaving him the command of his troops, after having concerted and agreed on the propereſt meaſures to reduce *Stenbuck*, without giving him battle, it not being poſſible for him to hold out any time for want of proviſions; ſo that at laſt, he muſt be obliged, not only to ſurrender the town, but alſo himſelf,

and

and all his troops priſoners at diſcretion.

The Czar after he had parted with the King of *Denmark*, took journey for *Hanover*, where he was magnificently received by his electoral highneſs, and his mother the old Princeſs *Sophia*, Electreſs-dowager. From *Hanover* he continued his rout towards *Wolfenbuttle*, and from that to *Shonhauſen*; where he had an interview with the King of *Pruſſia*. There they ſettled the affairs concerning *Pomerania*; after which he continued his journey through *Dantzick*, *Koningsberg* and *Riga*: here the Empreſs *Catharine* was delivered of a daughter, called *Eliſabeth-Marie*. As ſoon as the Empreſs had recovered her health and was able to travel, they all ſet forward together for St. *Petersburgh*; where the Czar was no ſooner arrived, than he ordered out a conſiderable number of ſhips, (about two hundred) with eight thouſand land forces on board, to make a deſcent on the coaſt of *Finland*. They debarked at *Helſingfors*, in view of the *Swediſh* General, *Lubecker*, who did not offer to hinder the deſcent, but retired in all haſte to *Abo*, in order to oppoſe them at that place. The Czar, finding his troops inſufficient to attack it, cauſed raiſe a breaſt-work about *Bergo*, (which he had ruined ſome years before)

Princeſs *Eliſabeth* born.

A deſcent into *Finland*.

BOOK X.

before) and erected a magazine, then returned to St. *Petersburgh*, where he ordered eight thouſand men more to be tranſported to the coaſt of *Finland*, in order to puſh his conqueſts in that province. After the debarkation of theſe new tranſports, Prince *Galitzin* put himſelf at the head of the whole, amounting to about ſixteen thouſand men, and marched ſtraight for *Abo*, the capital of *Finland*. The Czar at the ſame time put to ſea himſelf, with about twenty ſhips of force in order to attack a *Swediſh* ſquadron, which lay in the gulf, but ſo advantageouſly, that he did not think fit to attack it, but returned to join his land army, which had by this time attacked a paſs at *Carelſlo*, (defended by eight hundred *Swedes*) which they forced; then advanced towards *Abo*, which the enemy had abandoned, and found only in the place about thirty or forty old people, whom the Czar cauſed treat with all humanity. Beſides a good quantity of proviſions, there was a curious library, which his majeſty cauſed tranſport to St. *Petersburgh*. Prince *Galitzin* after having left a ſufficient garriſon in *Abo*, advanced with the army under his command, conſiſting of about fourteen thouſand men, towards *Thavaſthus*; which being no place of defence, the *Swedes* abandoned it, and retired to a ſtrong poſt called

The *Swedes* abandon *Abo*.

called *Pulcona*; where a ſharp encounter happened. The *Swediſh* body, conſiſting of about ſeven thouſand horſe and foot, were attacked by the *Ruſſians* both in front and rear; till at laſt, after a good reſiſtance they were beat, and forced to retire, with the loſs of nine hundred men killed, and two hundred taken priſoners, with all their artillery and baggage. The *Ruſſians* loſs was not inferior to that of the *Swedes*, who retired towards *Tammerfort*. The Czar cauſed fortify *Thavaſthus*, where he left a garriſon, in order to purſue his conqueſts the enſuing campaign.

BOOK X.

An encounter at *Pulcona*.

Matters went alſo pretty ſucceſsfully in *Holſtein* and *Pomerania*: the *Ruſſian* troops did not a little contribute to the reducing *Tonningen*, and General *Stenbuck*, who ſurrendered as his Czariſh majeſty had foretold: the King of *Denmark* uſed him in the beginning well, notwithſtanding his burning of *Altena*: he was allowed his full freedom in *Copenhagen*, on his parole neither to return to nor correſpond with *Sweden*; but being retaken afterwards, endeavouring to make his eſcape, he was more narrowly confined; by which he contracted a ſickneſs, whereof he died.

Count *Stenbuck* ſurrenders at diſcretion.

Prince *Menzekoff* who commanded the troops in *Pomerania*, finding it impoſſible to form the ſiege of *Stralſund*, without firſt rendering

BOOK X. rendering himſelf maſter of the iſland of *Rugen*; the *Ruſſian* troops in conjunction with the *Danes* and *Saxons*, put that deſign luckily in execution on the 23d of *July*, with the loſs of not above ten or twelve men: General *Duker* who was then on the iſland, retired in all haſte to *Stralſund*.

Stetin as is already ſaid, had been for ſome time inveſted, by a body of the *Ruſſians*; but on the 14th of *September* the ſiege was carried on in form, and it did not ſurrender till the laſt of that month, General *Myerfeldt* not being able for want of proviſions, to hold it out longer. Prince *Menzekoff* gave up this town to the King of *Pruſſia*, for a certain ſum of money.

Stetin ſurrenders.

The ſiege of *Stralſund* was not undertaken, on account of the advanced ſeaſon, but deferred till the enſuing campaign.

Swediſh Pomerania being now ſequeſtered in the King of *Pruſſia*'s hands, and *Holſtein* in the King of *Denmark*'s, the allies had no more to do in the King of *Sweden*'s dominions in *Germany*, but to retire with their troops. Prince *Menzekoff* did not care to depart empty handed, therefore threatened the town of *Hamburgh* with military execution, unleſs they payed him inſtantly down five hundered thouſand rix-dollars: they compounded for the half. The city of *Lubeck* being threatened in the like manner, payed

Money raiſed from *Hamburgh*, &c

ed an hundred thouſand, and *Dantzick* an hundred and fifty thouſand, and all this on frivolous pretences. After which he returned to St. *Petersburgh*, where he gave his majeſty the Czar an account of all that had happened in his abſence, wherewith he was well ſatisfied; only the ſequeſtration of *Pomerania* he would not ratify, ſince it tied him up from returning any more into that country; but having received a letter from the King of *Pruſſia* on that ſubject, he became eaſy, having had no deſign to keep poſſeſſion of any of theſe countries, but only marched his troops there to weaken his enemy the King of *Sweden*, and force him into a peace, in order to ſecure to himſelf the conqueſts he had made in *Livonia*, &c. beſides he thought he could employ his troops to better purpoſes in purſuing his conqueſts in *Finland*, and on the adjacent countries of *Sweden*.

The Emperor of *Germany*, together with the other powers intereſted in the wars of the north, had appointed a congreſs to be held at *Brunſwick*, whether the regency at *Stockholm* had agreed to ſend plenipotentiaries to treat of a general peace; but the project vaniſhed: for tho' ſeveral of the powers had named their ambaſſadors, and ſome of them had actually repaired to the ſaid town, yet all of them not meeting, there were no conferences

BOOK X.

ferences held. The Czar that wiſhed for nothing more than to conclude a ſolid peace, which might aſſure to him the poſſeſſion of his conqueſts, foreſaw with regret the little ſucceſs that muſt attend ſo important a project: and now judged his purſuing the war with vigour, was the only means to come at a good peace; ſo that he omitted nothing during the winter to enter early into the campaign; and follow out his deſigns on *Finland*, &c.

Prince *Galitzin* attacks and beats *Arnfelt*.

Prince *Galitzin* being informed that General *Arnfelt* ſtood intrenched near to *Vaſa*, marched with the troops under his command, (conſiſting of about fifteen thouſand foot and dragoons) and attacked the *Swediſh* General, whoſe body conſiſted of about eight thouſand men, regular troops and militia. Tho' the *Ruſſians* attacked with vigour, they were as warmly received and even repulſed; but on the ſecond attack, the *Swedes* were put in diſorder, and routed; *Arnfelt* not being able to make the militia ſtand longer to it, which occaſioned the loſs of this battle ſooner than it would have been, if the *Swediſh* troops had been all equally good. The *Swedes* had upwards of a thouſand men killed, and five hundred taken priſoners; the *Ruſſians* loſt near two thouſand killed and wounded: this battle gained all *Finland* to the Czar. The town of

Vaſa

Vaſa immediately ſurrendered. The Czar after this battle publiſhed a manifeſto, wherein he declared that it was the King of *Sweden*'s obſtinacy, in rejecting all propoſals of peace, that made him continue theſe hoſtilities, much againſt his inclination.

About this time the Governor of *Wiburgh* marched with fifteen hundred foot and dragoons, and made himſelf maſter of the iſland *Malin*; after which he attacked *Nyſlot*, wherein was a *Swediſh* garriſon, which held out a few days; but at laſt capitulated and ſurrendered, being without all hopes of ſuccours.

The *Swediſh* fleet under the command of admiral *Watrang*, gained ſome advantages on the coaſt of *Finland*, where they took ſeveral *Ruſſian* barks, and made upwards of two hundred priſoners: this fleet was ſent out by the regency to guard the coaſt of *Sweden*, particularly the iſland of *Allandt*, leaſt the Czar ſhould make an attempt on either.

The *Ruſſian* fleet commanded by Admiral *Apraxin*, conſiſted of thirty ſhips of the line, all built at St. *Petersburgh* and *Cronſtat*, ſixty gallies, an hundred half gallies, beſides a great many frigates, yachts, and other veſſels of tranſport. This fleet being aſſembled at *Cronſtat*, ſet ſail for the iſland

BOOK X.

of *Allandt*, where they had a ſharp encounter, with Rear-admiral *Erenſcholdt*, who lay in the road of that iſland with ſix gallies, and the like number of frigates, in view of the *Swediſh* fleet; which, notwithſtanding their continual fire, only ſunk one *Ruſſian* galley. The Rear-admiral was attacked by the Czar in perſon, to whom, after an engagement of three hours (fought with all the bravery immaginable) he was forced to ſurrender, with all his command, at diſcretion: beſides the Rear-admiral, there were about twenty other officers, and near ſix hundred ſeamen and ſoldiers, taken priſoners, with upwards of five hundred killed in the action. The *Ruſſians* ſuſtained likewiſe great loſs, having near to fifteen hundred killed and wounded. The Czar after this battle poſſeſſed himſelf of the iſle of *Allandt*, where he landed a body of about twelve thouſand men. Admiral *Watrang*, with the reſt of the *Swediſh* fleet retired towards the *Scheeren*, and left the *Ruſſians* maſters of the ſea; which, together with the taking of *Allandt*, occaſioned no ſmall diſturbance at *Stockholm*; ſo much, that the court was upon the point of removing to a fine palace, called *Droningſholm*, built by the old Queen-dowager, *Charles* the XII's grand mother, about ten *French* leagues above *Stockholm*. After this ſucceſsful expedition the Czar returned

The *Swediſh* Admiral ſurrenders to the Czar.

He takes poſſeſſion of *Allandt*.

turned to *Revel*, and from thence to St. *Petersburgh*; where after the Empreſs was delivered of another daughter called *Margaret*, he made a magnificent triumphant entry, and put a great deal of reſpect on the *Swediſh* Rear-admiral *Erenſcholdt* for having made ſo brave a defence, whereof he himſelf was witneſs, from the beginning to the end. Mr. *Erenſcholdt* owned that the *Ruſſians* had fought like lions, and with as much conduct as bravery; he ſaid further, that he wanted no more but his own experience, to convince him of the great abilities of the Czar, who in ſo ſhort a time had brought his ſubjects to that perfection, particularly his land and naval forces, that nothing in *Europe* could go beyond them.

The Czar, ſome time before the battle of *Allandt*, having launched an eighty-gun ſhip at St. *Petersburgh*, where numbers of the the old *Ruſſian* gentry were preſent, he made uſe of the occaſion to diſcourſe them, after the following manner:

His ſpeech to the *Ruſſian* gentry.

'Brethren (ſaid he), is there any one 'amongſt you that could have imagined 'thirty years ago to have ſeen the *Baltick* 'ſea covered with *Ruſſian* fleets, after the 'manner of the beſt poliſhed foreign na-'tions, and to find land armies formed after 'the moſt exact diſcipline in *Europe*, where-'with GOD has enabled us to make ſuch

BOOK X.

‘ ſurpriſing conqueſts, that our nation is at
‘ preſent held in admiration by all the reſt
‘ of the world? to ſee colleges for learn-
‘ ing, manufactories, and all trades flouriſh
‘ to that degree, that the remoteſt nations,
‘ not only admire us, but court our friend-
‘ ſhip? Hiſtorians ſay, the ſciences had their
‘ ariſe firſt in *Greece*; from whence, by
‘ the injury of the times, they were re-
‘ moved into *Italy*: from thence, over
‘ *France*, *Germany*, *Britain* *Sweden* and
‘ *Poland*; but never hitherto got admittance
‘ amongſt us, owing to the remiſſneſs and
‘ ſtupidity of our anceſtors. All theſe
‘ above-mentioned countries were once
‘ plunged into that darkneſs wherein we
‘ have hitherto lived; but by the indefa-
‘ tigable endeavours of their Governors,
‘ their eyes were opened, and they came by
‘ degrees to embrace thoſe arts and ſciences
‘ which *Greece* alone poſſeſſed in the be-
‘ ginning. Now it is come to our turn; if
‘ you will but heartily ſecond my endea-
‘ vours, by joining an exact ſtudy to your
‘ blind obedience, and applying yourſelves
‘ to follow the good, and ſhun the evil.
‘ I cannot compare the tranſmigration of
‘ ſciences better than to the circulation of
‘ the blood in human bodies. I am poſſeſ-
‘ ſed with the idea, that they may one day
‘ abandon *Great Britain*, *France*, *Ger-*

many,

'*many*, &c. and come and take up their re-
'ſidence for ſome ages amongſt us, till
'they return again into *Greece*, where they
'had their firſt riſe. I therefore recom-
'mend to you moſt earneſtly to put in
'practice this *Latin* ſentence, *ora & labora*,
'pray and labour: provided you go hear-
'tily to work, I do not deſpair of your
'being ſome time able to put the moſt
'civilized nations to the bluſh, and carry
'the glory of the *Ruſſian* name to the
'higheſt degree of perfection.'

The old *Ruſſians* gave a moſt reſpectful attention to their monarch's diſcourſe; and when he had made an end, they ſaid, *Yei yei prauda*, as much as to ſay, by all that's good 'tis true; which is a common expreſſion of theirs.

An Ambaſſador from *Perſia*,

Some time before this, an Ambaſſador had arrived from *Perſia*, who amongſt other preſents, brought the Czar one of the largeſt and fineſt elephants that had been ſeen, which his majeſty cauſed tranſport to St. *Petersburgh*, where he built a houſe for him, and cauſed treat him with great care.

and from the *Usbeck Tartars*.

Much about this time, the Cham of the *Usbeck-Tartars*, ſent an Ambaſſador to the Czar, offering to put himſelf and people under his protection; adding, that he would always be ready to aſſiſt his imperial majeſty with an army of fifty thouſand men, and

BOOK X.

and for the greater mark of his ſubmiſſion and duty, he would allow his caravans to paſs through his country to *China*; which journey they could accompliſh in four months time; whereas, by their former rout, it took up near a whole year. This was ſo very agreeable and convenient to the Czar, that he carreſſed the Ambaſſador in an extraordinary manner, carrying him to ſee every thing about St. *Petersburgh* and *Cronſtat*; where he exceedingly admired the fleet, never having ſeen any ſhipping before. He alſo begged of the Czar, that ſeeing his maſter was now become his majeſty's vaſſal, he would ſend his orders to the Cham *Ajuga*, ſome time ago vaſſal to the *Ruſſian* empire, to join him againſt their mutual enemies, and never more to join them againſt him; which the Czar moſt willingly did, and diſmiſſed him with conſiderable preſents, being always forward in procuring every thing that could tend to the benefit of his ſubjects, particularly in their commerce.

About the end of *July*, the imperial Princeſs was ſafely delivered of a daughter, who was named *Natalia*, after the Princeſs, Czar *Peter*'s full ſiſter: the imperial Prince or Czarowich, being at that time at *Carelsbad*, as he pretended, for his health.

In

In the beginning of *December* died at St. *Petersburgh* the mock King of the *Samoides:* he was a *French* gentleman of a good family, whoſe name was *de Vimenie*, and had commanded a regiment in *France;* but for ſome miſdemeanours, was put into the baſtile, where he became diſordered in his judgment. After he was liberate, he went firſt to *Poland*, then to *Ruſſia*, where the Czar created him King of the *Samoides*, and allowed him a penſion of ten or twelve rubles a month, beſides his entertainment at court. He was a facetious gentleman, and had attained a little of the *Ruſſian* language, which made him ſtill more diverting; ſo that the Czar often delighted in his company.

The mock King of the *Samoides.*

St. *Petersburgh* was by this time become a large and populous city, conſiſting of about thirty-five, or forty thouſand houſes. The Czar by his liberality, had drawn to it from all nations, people of all kinds of employments and trades: he had ſome time before ordered all the goods from *Ruſſia* to be ſhipped off from this place, and cauſed acquaint the regency of *Sweden*, that if they ſtopped any ſhips either coming in or going out of St. *Petersburgh*, he would fall upon means to ſtop all the ſhips going out or coming into the ports of *Sweden**.

Methods of raiſing St. *Petersburgh.*

This

* For one inſtance of his encouraging foreign traders, he went on board a ſmall *Scots* ſhip, drank a mug of flip with the maſter, and made him a preſent of a cable.

BOOK X.

The Order of St. *Katharine* inſtituted.

This year, on St. *Andrew*'s day, the order of St. *Katharine* was inſtituted, with this device, *For love and fidelity*. This was done to eternize the memory of the Empreſs-conſort, for having accompanied the Czar in his expedition againſt the *Turks* on the *Pruth*.

A chamber of juſtice for enquiring into abuſes.

His imperial majeſty, having ſome time ago perceived that ſeveral abuſes had been committed by the governors of the provinces, and thoſe who had the truſt of the finances, appointed a chamber of juſtice to enquire into theſe matters, under the direction of Prince *Baſil Dolgoruky*, where all the great perſons that had any management in the ſtate, were obliged to give an account of their conduct. The Great-admiral *Apraxin*, Prince *Menzekoff*, *Corſarow*, deputy-governor of *Ingria*, *Kekin* preſident of the admiralty, and *Sinavin* firſt commiſſary, *James Bruce* General of the artillery, and many more were examined. Admiral *Apraxin*, *Menzekoff* and *Bruce*, excuſed themſelves, as being moſtly abſent on their employments, and conſequently could not know what was done by thoſe they intruſted; nay, did not often know what was done in their own families, being often at ſo great a diſtance. This excuſe was received, partly on the account of the reaſonableneſs of it, but more for the favour they were

were in with their Prince: nevertheleſs, they were fined in round ſums, but others who could not juſtify their conduct were ſeverely puniſhed; ſome with the knout, others with the battogues, and ſeveral ſent in exile to *Siberia*, and their goods confiſcated. This being over, his majeſty appointed a ſenate, compoſed of eleven eminent perſons, Prince *James Dolgoruky* at their head, in order to prevent ſuch malverſations in time to come.

End of the Tenth Book.

THE HISTORY OF *PETER* the *GREAT*, EMPEROR of *RUSSIA*.

BOOK XI.

THE King of *Sweden*, disappointed of all his great expectations from the *Turks*, left the Grand Seignior's dominions, and travelled incognito through *Transilvania*, *Hungary* and *Germany*, and arrived at last at *Stralsund*, the 22d of *November* 1714, pretty late in the night. His arrival being known, all the princes in the neighbourhood sent to make him their compliments, and at the same time endeavoured to incline him to make peace, which was the least of his intentions: his first thoughts were employed on falling upon the speediest and most effectual means to raise and support

BOOK XI.

The King of *Sweden* arrives at *Stralsund*.

BOOK XI.

port a great army, in hopes to renew the war with better ſucceſs.

The Czar together with the kings of *Poland* and *Denmark*, attentive to all that was in agitation at *Stralſund*, reſolved to come ſoon to action, and give no time to this obſtinate enemy to put himſelf in a poſture of defence, and far leſs to act offenſively: the King of *Pruſſia*, from whom the King of *Sweden* demanded the reſtitution of *Stetin*, joined the above-mentioned allies. Moreover the elector of *Hanover*, who had lately aſcended the *Britiſh* throne, had by an agreement with the King of *Denmark* got *Bremen* and *Verden* delivered up to him; ſo that the war was like to go on more violently than before.

An alliance for oppoſing him.

The King of *Sweden*, one would think, had got time enough to reflect on his bypaſt miſtakes; tho' by his future conduct, it will appear that he was nothing mended, at leaſt for ſome time, till Baron *Gortz* got ſo much intereſt with him, that he was allowed to enter into a private treaty with the Czar; which happened about the end of the year 1715.

The Czar being advertiſed from good hands, that before the King of *Sweden* left *Turky*, he had entered into a treaty with the Sultan to attack *Ruſſia*; that tho' all the articles of peace had been fulfilled, and the hoſtages

hoſtages returned, yet the *Turks* and *Tartars*, contrary to their practice, continued in arms (for in time of peace none wear arms in *Turky*, no not the *Janiſſaries*, but walk with white ſticks only in their hands); the Czar was obliged to order a body of troops into the *Ukraine*, to obſerve their motions: he alſo had agreed with the reſt of the allies, that whilſt they attacked *Stralſund*, he ſhould make a deſcent into *Sweden*, and incomode the enemy on that quarter, which would prevent them from ſending troops into *Pomerania*.

The Czar ſails with a fleet, *&c.*

About the beginning of *June*, the Czar ſailed with a great fleet, and a numerous land force towards the iſland of *Gotland*, 1715. in order to ſtop all the paſſes betwixt *Sweden* and its *German* dominions; and at the ſame time Prince *Galitzin* marched from *Finland* with the troops under his command, towards the end of the *Bothnick* gulf, as if he deſigned to make an irruption into the north of *Sweden*. Thoſe motions kept the *Swediſh* troops about *Stockholm* in ſuch an uncertainty, that not knowing what courſe to take, they continued about their capital; ſo that the *Ruſſians* did what they pleaſed, meeting with no enemy to oppoſe them. About the beginning of *September*, the Czar ſailed from *Gotland* towards the coaſt of *Sudermania*; where, at *Gevel*, he cauſed

BOOK XI.

Much of *Sweden* plundered.

caused debark ten thousand of his troops, in order to fall upon the enemy and pillage the country, none of the *Swedish* troops being within sixteen *French* leagues of them. After having plundered the country all round, they returned to the fleet loaded with spoil.

Sheremetoff ordered into *Pomerania.*

Some weeks before, the Czar had ordered Marshal *Sheremetoff*, with a body of about twelve thousand foot and dragoons, into *Pomerania*, not only to assist the allies to reduce *Stralsund*, which had made a notable defence, but also the town of *Wismar*, the only place of strength remaining to the *Swedes* on the *German* side of the *Baltick*, and which had been invested some time before by the *Danes* and *Hanoverians*. Prince *Galitzin* about this time surprized the town and fortress of *Ulla*; where he found twenty-four pieces of cannon, with a great quantity of ammunition and provisions, and made the garrison prisoners. The Czar was now master of all that side of the *Bothnick* sea, down as far as *Torne* and *Kimi*, except only *Cajaneberg*, situated on an high rock scarcely accessible, but which had been invested some months ago, in hopes to reduce it by famine.

His Czarish majesty being returned with his fleet to St. *Petersburgh*, had the unex-

pressible

preſſible joy to ſee a grandſon born to him, on the 22d of *October*; but this joy was ſoon changed into the moſt ſenſible grief, by the death of the illuſtrious mother, the imperial Princeſs. Some hours before ſhe expired, ſhe ſent and deſired the Czar to come and ſee her; to whom ſhe recommended her two children, the Prince who was called *Peter*, and the Princeſs *Natalia*; as alſo her ſervants, whom he promiſed to care for. She died the ſixth day after the birth of the Prince, univerſally regreted.

The Czar's grandſon born. The mother dies.

On the 8th of *November* the Empreſs *Katharine* was brought to-bed of a Prince, which gave ſo great pleaſure to the Czar, that the rejoicings continued above eight days. On the 17th this Prince was baptized by the name of *Peter*; the kings of *Denmark* and *Pruſſia* ſtanding godfathers by their proxies.

A ſon born.

The Czar about this time had the accounts of an irruption made by ſix thouſand of the *Cuban Tartars* (the *Cham*'s ſon at their head) into the kingdom of *Caſan*, where they had plundered the country, and were carrying off ſeveral thouſands of the people into ſlavery, had not Colonel *Swarts* at the head of his regiment, with a body of the country people (amounting in whole to about three thouſand) fallen upon them and cut them to pieces: he relieved thoſe they were

The *Cuban Tartars* ſuppreſſed.

BOOK XI.

were carrying into ſlavery, recovered the whole booty, took the Cham's ſon, together with the reſt of the leaders, and cauſed hang them on the ſpot.

King *Auguſtus* creates new difficulties.

In *Poland* King *Auguſtus* created to himſelf new troubles, occaſioned by the exorbitant contributions his *Saxon* troops raiſed in the country. The *Poles* formed themſelves into a new confederacy, with one *Gruzinſky* (couſin to him, formerly mentioned) at their head. Many of the crown-army under the Great-general *Siniauſky* left him, and joined the confederates, who declared war againſt the *Saxons*, and they gave each other no quarter. King *Auguſtus* in this melancholy ſituation had recourſe to the Czar, demanding his aſſiſtance; but the Czar had his own reaſons for not ſending troops into *Poland*, but ſent orders to his Ambaſſador, Prince *Dolgoruky*, to accomodate theſe differences; which he was not able to effectuate, until the *Saxon* troops were removed out of the country.

Stralſund ſurrenders.

Stralſund ſome time ago had ſurrendered to the confederates. The King of *Sweden* had left it only two days before, and with great difficulty got over to *Sweden*, paſſing in view of the *Daniſh* frigates.

1716. The Czar left St. *Petersburgh* in the beginning of *February* 1716. On his way to *Dantzick*, accompanied by the Empreſs *Katharine*

tharine, who would not leave him, being not fully recovered of a ſlight indiſpoſition, which had obliged him to keep his room for ſome days. He went through *Riga* and arrived at *Dantzick* about the laſt of the ſaid month, where he continued until the end of *April*, and amongſt other affairs of high conſequence, he agreed to the marriage of his niece, the Princeſs *Katharine* eldeſt daughter of his brother Czar *John*, with the Duke of *Mechlenburgh:* he deſigned to put this Prince in poſſeſſion of *Wiſmar*, together with its diſtrict; and having ſome time ago ordered Marſhal *Sheremetoff* into *Pomerania*, with about twelve thouſand of his troops; judging that number not ſufficient, he ordered eight thouſand men more out of *Courland* to join him. The Czar had good reaſon for putting this town into the hands of a friend, becauſe it would always be a ſafe retreat for his ſhipping on that ſide.

The Duke of *Mechlenburgh* marries the Czar's niece.

The Duke of *Mechlenburgh*'s marriage with the above-mentioned Princeſs, was celebrated on the 19th of *April*, in preſence of his Imperial majeſty, the empreſs *Katharine*, and King *Auguſtus*, who was come to *Dantzick* to confer with the Czar about the diſorders in *Poland*. The Czar having accounts that ſome more than forty of his gallies were arrived at *Koningsberg*, went thither, and after having viewed them, he

BOOK XI. gave audience to the *Perſian* Ambaſſador, and diſmiſſed him with full aſſurance that he would powerfully aſſiſt his maſter againſt his rebellious ſubjects. From *Koningsberg*, he went on board the gallies; then returned to *Dantzick* the 9th of *May*, where he had the agreeable accounts that *Cajaneberg*, the only place the *Swedes* had kept poſſeſſion of on all the eaſt ſide of the *Bothnick* ſea, had ſurrendered to Prince *Galitzin*: there were found about twenty pieces of cannon, plenty of ammunition, but little or no proviſions; the garriſon conſiſting of about two hundred men were made priſoners of war.

Demands on *Dantzick.*

The Czar after he went from *Dantzick* to *Koningsberg*, cauſed make ſome demands on the magiſtrates (which King *Auguſtus* agreed to); and they payed an hundred thouſand rix dollars, beſides engaging to break off all commerce with *Sweden* during the war, and keep up four frigates which the King of *Poland* was to furniſh. The Czar went from *Koningsberg* to *Stolpe*, a town belonging to the King of *Pruſſia*, and from thence to *Stetin*; where that King met him incognito, in order to confer together on the ſituation of the affairs in the north, particularly with regard to *Denmark*. They both agreed, that it would not be proper to aſſiſt *Denmark* in making any conqueſts on the King

King of *Sweden*, that crown being ſufficiently weakened by the loſs of *Finland*, *Livonia*, and *Pomerania*; but there was ſomewhat more in it, which was not as yet come above board. The Czar went from *Stetin* to *Stralſund*, and from that to *Mechlenburgh*, where he had the accounts, that before his ſecond reinforcement came up, *Wiſmar* had ſurrendered, and received into their town a garriſon of the *Hanoverians* in concert with the King of *Denmark*. This was a great mortification to the Czar, and the ſource of all the miſunderſtanding which after happened betwixt him and the court of *Hanover*, and conſequently that of *Great Britain*.

The ſource of the Czar's grudge at King *George*.

Whilſt the Czar was concerting meaſures with the Duke of *Mechlenburgh*, how to repair this unlucky ſtep, the King of *Denmark* arrived at *Altena*, where the Czar and he got country houſes and gardens from the *Hamburghers*; they reſolved to paſs ſome few days there, and on the 28th of *April* the King came to viſit the Czar, with whom he continued in conference about an hour. The two monarchs remained at *Altena* till the fourth of the enſuing month, and agreed to make a deſcent with their joint forces on *Schonen*, to oblige the King of *Sweden* to leave *Norway*: the Czar undertook to join him with his fleets and land

Concerts meaſures with the King of *Denmark*.

BOOK XI.

forces; and their rendezvous was to be at and about *Copenhagen*.

The Czar left his country ſeat, and went to *Pyrment*, where he drank the water ſome days: from that he returned to *Schwerin* in *Mechlenburgh*. On the 4th of *July*, the Czar with the Empreſs *Katharine* arrived at *Poltock*, where thirty-ſix *Ruſſian* gallies had been ſome time. He went on board the Admiral-galley, and after having cauſed debark eight thouſand of his troops on the iſland of *Rugen*, he reviewed them, together with two other bodies; all which he ordered into *Mechlenburgh*, under the command of prince *Repnin* and Lieutenant-general *Bower*: during the march of the *Ruſſian* troops, the King of *Denmark* was with all poſſible diligence making preparations for the deſcent. The Czar about the middle of *July* arrived with the Empreſs at *Lubeck*, and on the 17th, he with all the gallies arrived in the road of *Copenhagen*; where the King of *Denmark*, with many of his courtiers, went out in a barge to meet him. His Czariſh majeſty was received with a diſcharge of all the guns of the town and fleet; then the King went on board the Czar's galley, after which they entered the town together. There needs not much be ſaid of the magnificence of their reception at the

The Czar arrives in the road of *Copenhagen*.

the *Daniſh* court, it was as juſt as well as the place could afford.

Two days after, a ſquadron from *England*, and another from *Holland*, arrived in the road before *Copenhagen*, with a great fleet of merchant ſhips deſigned for ſeveral ports in the *Baltick*; the Czar curious to ſee all theſe fleets under ſail together, cauſed make the propoſal to Admiral *Norris*, who frankly agreed to it: the chief command was conferred on the Czar; Admiral *Norris* had the van, and the *Daniſh* Admiral Count *Guildenlaw* the rear; the *Dutch* Vice-admiral was ordered to convoy the merchant ſhips to their different ports.

On the 16th of *Auguſt*, his Czariſh majeſty hoiſted the imperial flag on the main-maſt head, to let them know that he had taken the chief command upon him; whereupon he was ſaluted by the *Engliſh* Admiral with a diſcharge of all his guns; the other admirals did the like; after which, the Czar gave the ſignal to ſail: whereupon Sir *John Norris*, as alſo the *Daniſh* and *Dutch* admirals, weighed anchor, and after having ſailed in conjunction for about two leagues from *Copenhagen*, the Czar ſtopt and caſt anchor: Admiral *Norris* did the ſame, about a mile in head of him, and ſo of the reſt. The Czar ſailed with the combined fleets up the length of *Amholm*, with deſign

Diverts himſelf with the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* fleets.

BOOK XI. ſign to come up with the *Swediſh* fleet; but they had already retired into *Carelſkroon*: then the combined fleets continued ſailing, until they all came up, and caſt anchor before *Stralſund*; where the Czar ſent orders to *Roſtock*, *Travemunde*, &c. that all his troops ſhould embark and ſail for *Copenhagen*, to which place his majeſty with the whole fleet in a few days returned. Nothing could give the Czar greater pleaſure, than ſeeing himſelf at the head of the fleets of four different nations, and where they made ſo great an appearance, that the like was ſcarcely to be ſeen, amounting in all to about eight hundred ſhips of all kinds.

The deſcent on *Schonen* ſuſpended.

After the Czar returned to *Copenhagen*, he thought it proper to defer the deſcent on *Schonen* till the enſuing ſpring; giving for reaſons, that in the firſt place, the year was ſo far ſpent, that they could not propoſe taking of *Malmo* or any of the fortified towns; and that he was well informed the *Swedes* had conſumed and carried off all the proviſions; ſo that the army could not but ſuffer exceedingly. The King of *Denmark*, on the other hand, urged ſtrenuouſly that the deſcent ſhould then be made; aſſuring the Czar, that they had ſtill time enough to take a town or two, and that proviſions to the army ſhould not be wanting, tho' he ſhould be obliged to tranſport them

them from his own country: but all would not do, the Czar was poſitive. At laſt, his *Daniſh* majeſty was ſo preſſing, that the Czar told him, if he would undertake it, (tho' he did not think it practicable) he ſhould aſſiſt him with ſixteen battalions of foot, and a thouſand dragoons; but the King demanded twenty-five battalions of foot, which the Czar would not grant. The King finding himſelf diſappointed, cauſed by his miniſter acquaint the Czar, that ſince in all appearance he had never heartily deſigned this deſcent, he ſhould have told him ſo much when they had concerted the affair together near *Hamburgh*, which would have ſaved him a vaſt deal of charges, having been obliged to lay out forty thouſand crowns a month for the tranſports alone; ſo that he looked upon this deſign as altogether laid aſide; and all the favour he had now to aſk of his Czariſh majeſty, was to remove his troops out of his dominions immediately, ſeeing he had no more uſe for them. The King of *Denmark* in his juſtification which he publiſhed on this occaſion, gave his reaſons as above.

The King of *Denmark* ill ſatisfied.

The Czar ordered forthwith all the troops he had in the *Daniſh* dominions into *Mechlenburgh*, where they were to have their winter quarters, and to be employed in the ſpring

BOOK XI.

ſpring as occaſion ſhould offer. His fleets (both ſhips and gallies) returned moſt of them to St. *Petersburgh:* he himſelf, with the Empreſs *Katharine*, went through *Jutland* into *Mechlenburgh*. At *Frederickſtadt*, as he paſſed, he looked narrowly into the manufactories; from thence he went to *Lubeck*, and from that to *Havelberg*, where he had an interview with the King of *Pruſſia*. The two princes continued ſome days together, and conferred on the affairs of *Sweden* and *Poland*. The Czar had ſome time ago communed on the affairs of *Sweden*, when his *Swediſh* majeſty and he were very near an accommodation; otherways the invaſion of *Schonen* had infallibly gone on.

The Czar in *Holland*.

From *Havelberg* the Czar went to *Hamburgh*, where he reſted a few days; after which he took journey for *Holland*, leaving the command of his army in *Mechlenburgh* to Marſhal *Sheremetoff*. He arrived at *Amſterdam* about the middle of *December* towards night: next day he was ſaluted and welcomed by four deputies, whom the ſtates had appointed to attend him during his ſtay in *Holland*.

The affairs in *Poland* were all this time nothing bettered. Prince *Gregorie Dolgoruky* the Czar's Ambaſſador at that court, as mediator, in name of his maſter, got them

them at laſt to agree to a ceſſation of arms, and to hold a congreſs at *Lublin*, in order to ſettle matters. The confederates were ſo high in their demands, that nothing was concluded; ſo that from *Lublin* they adjourned the congreſs, and tranſported it to *Warſaw*; but the Czar knowing very well the temper of the *Poles*, ordered the lieutenant-generals, *Renn* and *Bower*, to march into *Poland* with a body of fifteen thouſand of his troops, in order to force thoſe who were not for peace to ſubmit. This, together with a defeat the confederates had met with near *Thorne* from the *Saxon* troops, obliged them to conclude peace on the 3d of *November*, under the guarantie of his Czariſh majeſty; who nevertheleſs continued his troops in *Poland*, where they were aſſigned quarters, to prevent the reſtleſs *Poles* (who were not in uſe of keeping treaties) from committing new hoſtilities. The *Saxon* troops by the articles of peace were obliged to leave *Poland*.

Affairs in *Poland*.

The Czar, as he was expecting the Empreſs *Katharine* at *Amſterdam*, received the agreeable accounts of her being ſafely delivered of a Prince, at *Wezel*; which his majeſty immediately notified to the ſtates, intreating them at the ſame time to become godfathers; but receiving advice that the young Prince died the day of his birth,

BOOK XI. 1717.

they had not the occaſion to accept of that honour. He employed his time in obſerving all the curioſities, in and about the place; particularly at *Sardam*, where he went to viſit his old acquaintance, and the houſe he had lodged in formerly, and where he had wrought as a carpenter; which the *Dutch* had called *Princehuys*.

At laſt, the Empreſs arrived at *Amſterdam* on the 9th of *February* 1717; where ſhe was received, and complimented after the ſame manner the Czar had been before. From *Amſterdam* their majeſties went to the *Hague*, where they continued to the 4th of *April*. The Czar (always curious whereever he went) hearing there was a mathematician in the place, who pretended to have found out the longitude, went to ſee his performances, and put to him ſome nice queſtions; which he anſwered in the beſt manner he could, and was not a little ſurprized to find a Prince ſo well verſed in the mathematicks. The Czar owned he was an ingenious fellow, but had no great faith in his pretended diſcovery.

Whilſt the Czar was in *Holland*, ſome intrigues were diſcovered in *England*, carried on by Baron *Gortz* and Count *Gyllemberg*, tending to the exciting an inſurrection in *Great Britain*, in favour of the Chevalier de St. *George*. Count *Gyllemberg*,

Count *Gyllemberg* and Baron *Gortz* arreſted.

berg, envoy extraordinary from the King of *Sweden*, was arreſted, and all his papers ſeized. At the ſame time the States-general treated Baron *Gortz*, and the young Count *Gyllemberg*, after the ſame manner, at the inſtance of the *Britiſh* court. On this occaſion, ſome letters found amongſt their papers were publiſhed, with relation to that deſign, which was to have been put in execution the enſuing month of march; to favour and ſupport which, the King of *Sweden* was to make a deſcent into *Scotland* with ten thouſand foot, and two thouſand horſe, with arms and ammunition for as many more. It appeared by ſome letters, particularly one from young Count *Gyllemberg*, writ from the *Hague* the 27th of *November* 1716. that the Czar had no knowledge of this deſign, but that they were in hopes he would be perſuaded to enter into it. Indeed his Czariſh majeſty was ſuſpected of having a hand in this project; tho' by thoſe letters it would ſeem, and by the memorial his miniſter preſented to the court at *London*, (complaining of the injuſtice which was done him) that he had no knowledge thereof: for he declared, that he was far from approving of any inſurrection or deſign of that kind againſt a crowned head, who was in alliance with him, not only whilſt elector of *Hanover*, but ſince he mounted the

BOOK XI.

Britiſh throne; and that *Britain* had time out of mind been in good underſtanding and friendſhip with *Ruſſia*, and enjoyed an advantageous commerce. This memorial met with ſo ſuitable a return, that the world ſeemed ſatisfied the Czar had no hand in the project. 'Tis true, the declarations of public miniſters are very uncertain marks of the intentions of their maſters, who find it very convenient to have people to tell lies for them at foreign courts.

His majeſty left the *Hague* on the 4th of *April*, on his journey to *Paris* by *Amſterdam*; and from that to *Antwerp*, where he was received by the Duke of *Holſtein Ploen*, who was ordered by the Emperor to do him all honours, and accompany him through the *Auſtrian Netherlands*. He arrived on the 14th at *Bruſſels*; from that he paſſed through *Ghent* and *Bruges* to *Dunkirk*, where he obſerved the *Riſ-bank*, after the model whereof, he propoſed to raiſe one at *Cronſtat*, or St. *Petersburgh*.

The Czar in *Paris*.

On the 7th of *May* his majeſty arrived at *Paris*, where great preparations were made for his reception: he was conducted by the Marſhal *de Teſſé* into the *Louvre* where a magnificent entertainment was prepared for him: after which, he went and lodged at the *Hotel de Leſdiguire*'s, and was viſited next morning early by the Duke of *Orleans* Regent.

gent. On the tenth, he had a viſit from the King: his Czariſh majeſty received the young monarch as he ſtept out of the coach. He returned the viſit next day, when the King did the like honour to him. That ſame day, the magiſtrates of *Paris* came to ſalute his Czariſh majeſty, and made him preſents. Theſe ceremonies being over, he employed his time for ſome days in viſiting all the curioſities, fine hotels, public places, bridges, with all the royal houſes in and about that great city, *viz.* St. *Cloud* (where he was received and entertained by the Regent) and *Meadon*; after which, he went to *Fountainbleau*; where, on the road, at *Petitbourg*, he was entertained by the Duke *d'Antin*: at *Fountainbleau*, (where he continued only one night) he was regalled and diverted with the deer-hunting, by the Count *de Toulouſe*; after dinner he returned to *Petitbourg*, where he was entertained as before. The 1ſt of *June*, he returned to *Paris*, after having paid a viſit at *Choiſi*, to the Princeſs-dowager of *Conti*. On the 2d, he went to St. *Dennis*, where he ſaw the treaſury, *&c.* and was entertained by the *Benedictines* in the abbey. From St. *Dennis* on his return to *Paris*, he was received and entertained by the Duke *de Treſines* at St. *Ouen*. On the 3d, his majeſty went to *Verſailles*, where he continued

BOOK XI.

ed only a few minutes. He compared this palace to a pidgeon with the wings of an eagle: from *Verſailles* he went to *Trianon*, which he liked much better, and viewed with great curioſity the gardens, canals and caſcades; particularly thoſe at *Marly* (together with the machine) where he was regalled with the King's muſick, and a ball. All the court ladies, whoſe curioſity led them to ſee this great Prince, came there: the dancing continued till late at night, wherewith the Czar was much diverted. The 11th, he went to St. *Germains en Lay*, and after having viewed the old and new caſtle, he went from thence to the monaſtery of St. *Syr*, and viſited Madam *de Maintenon*: then, after having obſerved the houſe, and the deſign thereof, which he approved much: he returned, and lay all night at *Trianon*. The 12th he returned to *Paris* by the way of *Verſailles*, where he viewed all the curioſities about this place; after having dined he went to *Chailot*, and paid a viſit to the Queen of King *James* VII. after which he paſſed through the *Cours la Reine*, and went to Mr. *de Launai*'s, where the medals are ſtruck, and where the Duke *d'Antin* waited on him, and in his preſence cauſed ſtrick a medal of gold, which he preſented to the Czar, who was ſurprized to ſee his own effigies on the one ſide, with

with these words, PETRUS ALEXUWICH CZAR MAG. RUSS. IMPERATOR, and on the reverse two trumpets, with these words, VIRES ACQUIRIT EUNDO; alluding to the different voyages this Prince had made. After which, all who accompanied him, were presented with medals of silver, like the first. On the 13th in the morning, the Pope's Nuncio came to wait on him, and made his compliment in *Italian*. On the 14th, he went to the royal printing-house; from that to the college of the four nations, founded by Cardinal *Mazarine*, where he viewed the library and the church; from which he went to the *Sorbonne*, and was received by the * doctors: here he admired Cardinal *Richelieu*'s tomb. When he returned to his hotel, he found the Ambassadors of *Portugal* and *Malta*, who were come to salute him. He was much taken with the tapestry at the *Gobelins*, particularly with the history of *Don-Quixot*, which the King presented him with afterwards. On the 16th, he went to view the *French* houshold in the *Elisian* fields; but there was such a croud and dust, that he fell ill and was obliged to leave the place, without

* Some of the doctors presented him with proposals in *Latin*, for an union between the two churches of *Rome* and *Russia*.

BOOK XI.

out ſeeing the troops march off, or taking a right view of them. On the 17th, after having received a preſent of an excellent ſea-chart from the Duke *de Toulouſe*, he went to the obſervatory, where he continued about two hours, viewing and obſerving, every thing narrowly; whence he went and ſupped with the Marſhal *de Villars* and was entertained, with all the gaiety imaginable. On the 19th, he went incognito to take leave of the King, where he preſented his majeſty with the plan of St. *Petersburgh*. On the 19th he went to hear the pleadings in the parliament, where, after two advocates had pleaded a cauſe, the King's advocate reſuming the whole, added that there had been ſeveral examples where this court had been conſulted by ſovereigns on the moſt important affairs of ſtate, but that a monarch whoſe dominions lay at ſo great a diſtance from *France* equally powerful in *Aſia* and *Europe*, would needs be pleaſed to witneſs their ſeſſion, was, an event ſo rare that it ought to be enrolled in the regiſters of parliament, to be tranſmitted to poſterity. After which the Czar roſe up and ſaluted the gentlemen of the law, who were all richly apparelled; the preſidents in their ſcarlet furred robes, which had not been practiſed in any time paſt, but in preſence of the Emperor *Charles* V.

That

That ſame day in the afternoon, the King went to viſit and take leave of the Czar, who went afterwards to the academy of ſciences, and obſerved with great curioſity all the uſeful inventions at that place. On the 20th, he went a ſecond time to ſee the medals of the King of *France*, which he examined with attention, particularly that of the preſent King, with the riſing ſun and device JUBET SPERARE; the director thought himſelf obliged to make a preſent of it to his Czariſh majeſty; which he thankfully received, declaring, that he would preſerve it with great regard. Before he left *Paris*, he cauſed purchaſe (amongſt other curioſities) a ſphere exactly done by Mr. *Pigen*, according to *Copernicus*'s ſyſtem; after which to ſhow his gratitude to the *French* quality, who had paid him ſo great reſpect and attendance, during his ſtay at *Paris*, he gave his pictures richly ſet in diamonds to the Duke *d'Antin*, the Marſhal *de Teſſé*, the Marſhal *d'Etrees*, the Marquis of *Livry* and to Mr. *de Verton*; which laſt he had ſo great conſideration for, that he procured to him from the King a penſion of ſix thouſand livres: he alſo made a preſent to Mr. *de Creſmes* of a gold watch ſet with diamonds; beſides which, he cauſed diſtribute a great many golden medals among ſeveral of the *French* officers, with the Kings ſer-

BOOK XI.

vants at *Verſailles*, *Marly*, *Trianon*, *Meadon* and *Fountainbleau*, which he intruſted Mr. *de Verton* to deliver. He alſo preſented the Duke *d'Antin*, and ſeveral other perſons of diſtinction, with medals ſtruck in *Holland*, repreſenting the moſt remarkable actions of his reign.

Leaving *Paris*, the Czar purſued his rout through *Reims* to *Namur*, where he arrived on the 25th; the Count of *Hompeck* (the Governor) received and regalled his majeſty after the beſt manner poſſible: he took great pleaſure in obſerving the fortifications. His majeſty was alſo received at *Liege*, in name of the elector, with all poſſible honours; here he met with his old *London* acquaintance the Duke of *Leids*, to whom he was exceeding generous. At laſt he arrived at *Amſterdam* on the 2d of *Auguſt*, where the Empreſs *Katharine* expected him with impatience: he continued at this place, and in the neighbourhood, until the 2d of *September*, obſerving exactly every thing that was worth ſeeing; after which he departed for *Berlin*, through *Cleves* and *Magdeburg*.

His majeſty before returning to his own dominions, being urged by the King and republic of *Poland* to cauſe remove his troops out of that country, ſent an order to Marſhal *Sheremetoff* to that effect.

The

The Czar arrived at *Berlin* on the 19th, and the Empreſs on the 25th; to which place alſo the Duke and Dutcheſs of *Mechlenburgh* were come to ſalute their majeſties. The Czar had ſeveral conferrences with the King of *Pruſſia*, with whom he continued three days, after which he purſued his rout through *Dantzick*, *Koningsberg*, *Riga* and *Revel*, till he arrived at St. *Petersburgh*; where, after ſixteen months abſence, his preſence was neceſſary. Before his arrival at *Dantzick*, Prince *Dolgoruky* had ſettled all matters in diſpute with that city; which his majeſty ratified. The Czar during his abſence, found that ſeveral abuſes had crept into the government, beſides the elopement of his ſon, the Czarowich, which gave him the greateſt uneaſineſs of all, not knowing at firſt to what place in the world he had gone.

The Czar's return to St. *Petersburgh*.

Finds things to make him uneaſy.

End of the Eleventh Book.

THE HISTORY OF *PETER* the *GREAT*, EMPEROR of *RUSSIA*.

BOOK XII.

THE Czar employed his time the reſt of the year (1717) in examining into the conduct of his miniſters, in rectifying abuſes, and in puniſhing the guilty. He continued all the mornings in the ſenate, examining the complaints brought by his ſubjects: but finding that the evil was greater than he had firſt imagined, he would not proceed raſhly, but allow time to the delinquents to produce their reaſons. For this end, he eſtabliſhed a tribunal, divided into ſeveral claſſes; each of which was compoſed of a Major, a Captain, and Lieutenant of the guards, who were to examine carefully the affairs under their cognizance,

BOOK XII.

cognizance, and to pronounce ſentence: ſo that without regard or diſtinction of perſons, (neither ſervice nor rank conſidered) the ſenate, compoſed of the moſt illuſtrious and diſtinguiſhed perſons of the empire, was obliged to appear before this tribunal, and give an account of their conduct. The Czar to his great regret found but too many guilty, who were puniſhed according to their crimes. His majeſty during theſe examinations, (at which he was preſent by four in the morning) cauſed publiſh new regulations, which were the fruits of his travels: he eſtabliſhed different councils for foreign affairs, the finances, the navy, marine, the manufactories and commerce, after the manner of *France*.

New abuſes puniſhed.

Different councils eſtabliſhed.

About this time, he received accounts that the *Cuban-Tartars*, who inhabit the countries beyond the frontiers of *Caſan*, were aſſembling in great bodies, with deſign to invade that kingdom: the Czar at firſt did not believe that this could be done, but by the connivance of the *Porte*, or at leaſt of the *Tartars* of the *Crimea*; but the Governor of *Aſoph* was among the firſt who gave advertiſement of their motions, and the Sultan ſent an Aga expreſs to the Czar, to certify him, that he had no hand in the incurſions of theſe rebels, but on the contrary, was reſolved to obſerve religiouſly the laſt

laſt treaty; that far from favouring them in the leaſt, he had given orders to give them no harbour, if in their retreat they entered into any of the countries belonging to the *Ottoman* empire.

Meaſures taken for ſuppreſſing the *Cuban Tartars.*

The Czar was ſatisfied with this declaration, and believed the Sultan ſincere, the rather that he knew his highneſs had other affairs on hand in *Servia*, and other parts of his empire; ſo that his Czariſh majeſty only ordered ten thouſand foot and dragoons, in conjunction with the *Coſſacks*, to oppoſe the *Tartars*.

1718.

After this, he gave orders to rigg out a ſtrong fleet againſt the ſpring; then left St. *Petersburgh* and went to *Moſcow*, where he had not been for ſeven years paſt. He was received in his capital, where he arrived in the beginning of *January* (1718), with univerſal joy; but he had not been long there, before he obſerved many abuſes, the rectifying and puniſhing of which, he referred to the tribunal he had eſtabliſhed: but what concerned him moſt, was the flight of his ſon the Czarowich, heir apparent of the empire, who, as the Czar left *Copenhagen*, before he went into *Holland*, the better to ſucceed in his deſign, gave out that he was going to join the Czar his father, who actually had invited him, as will appear by the following Letter.

Abuſes at *Moſcow.*

The Czarowich's flight.

My

The Czar's letter to his ſon.

My Son,

'YOUR firſt letter of the 29th of *June*, 'and the other of the 30th of *July*, 'I have received; but ſeeing you only write 'of the ſtate of your health, I ſend you 'theſe to acquaint you, that I want to 'know your reſolution in regard to the 'ſucceſſion. When I parted with you laſt, 'you told me, according to your uſual way 'of ſpeaking, that you did not think your-'ſelf capable of it on account of your in-'firmities; and that you would prefer a 'retreat into a convent. I told you to 'think ſeriouſly on an affair of ſo great 'conſequence, and to acquaint me with 'your reſolution, which I have expected 'theſe ſeven months bygone; and to this 'day, I have not heard a word from you 'on that ſubject. You have had time e-'nough to think of it; ſo on receipt here-'of take your part, either of the one or 'the other: if you reſolve on the firſt, 'which is to apply, and render yourſelf 'capable of the ſucceſſion, do not defer a-'bove a week in ſetting out for this place, 'where you will be in time enough to 'witneſs the operations of the enſuing cam-'paign: but if you rather chuſe the other 'part, let me know where, at what time, 'and on what day, you'll put your reſolu-

'tion

'tion in execution, that I may be eaſy and know what I have to expect from you. Let me have your final anſwer by the courier who delivers you theſe. In the firſt inſtance, acquaint me how you are to take journey from St. *Petersburgh*, and what day you are to ſet out. I repeat once more, that I am poſitive you determine yourſelf to ſomething, otherways, I will conclude you only deſign to gain time, to paſs it in your ordinary indolence and ſtupidity.'

Copenhagen, Auguſt 26th 1716.

PETER.

The Czarowich ſaw plainly, that he muſt now determine himſelf one way or other. He wanted to govern, not over a poliſhed and civilized people, but over *Ruſſians* after their old way. He thought it too dangerous and troubleſome to follow the ſteps of his great and prudent father, who was at unſpeakable pains to impreſs right principles on him (a little too late); but all would not do. He had got into the hands of the clergy, who could not bear with the Czar's annexing the greater part of their revenues to the crown; ſo that all their hope was in the Czarowich, who they expected would make all things run in the former channel. There

BOOK XII. were other diſſatisfied great men in the nation, particularly his mother's kindred: in a word all the great things his father had done he ſlighted and deſpiſed. However he anſwered his majeſty's letter, promiſing to depart within the time limited; which 'tis true he did, but not with the deſign of going to his father, but to make his eſcape: ſo having provided himſelf with a round ſum of money, he purſued his journey through *Livonia*, and from thence ſtraight to *Vienna*. On the road he wrote to his father, and dated the letter as from *Koningsberg*, leſt the Czar ſhould have ordered an eſcort to meet him.

The Czar was at *Amſterdam* when he got the firſt accounts of his ſon's flight: he immediately diſpatched ſeveral perſons of his retinue to all the courts of *Germany* and *Italy*, to endeavour to find him out. The Czar judged that he would go and put himſelf under the protection of the Emperor. He did ſo indeed; but conſidering his circumſtances the Emperor adviſed him to keep private; and for that reaſon perſuaded him to go into the kingdom of *Naples*, where he would be leſs expoſed to be known: but the vigilance and prudence of his father ſoon found him out; and as he had left *Paris* he had ſure accounts that his ſon was in the caſtle of St. *Elmi*; and having got the lenght

length of *Spa*, he diſpatched his privy-counſellor Mr. *Tolſtoy*, and captain *Romanzoff* to *Naples*, to perſuade the Czarowich willingly to return and ſubmit to his father. They were charged with the following letter: BOOK XII.

SON,

Another letter to the Czarowich.

'YOUR diſobedience and contempt of my orders is known to all the world. Neither my words nor my threats have had influence to make you follow my inſtructions; and at laſt after having deceived me when I took leave of you, and having no regard to the oaths you made me, you have puſhed your diſobedience to the extremity by your flight, and putting your ſelf, like a traitor, under the protection of a ſtranger: a thing unheard of hitherto, not only in our family, but alſo amongſt our ſubjects of any conſideration. What prejudice, and trouble have you not occaſioned by it to your father, and diſgrace to your country? I write you for the laſt time, to let you know that you are to do what *Tolſtoy* and *Romanzoff* will tell you from me. If you are affraid of me, I aſſure you by this, and I promiſe before GOD and his angels, that I ſhall not puniſh you; and if you ſubmit and be-

BOOK XII.

'come obedient to my will, and return, 'I ſhall love you more than ever; but if 'you do not, but continue obſtinate, I give 'you as your father, in virtue of the power 'I have received from GOD, my eternal ma-'lediction, for the vexation and offence 'you have cauſed me. And as your ſove-'reign, I aſſure you I ſhall find means to 'treat you as you deſerve; in which 'I hope GOD will aſſiſt me, and take 'my juſt cauſe into his hand. Moreover 'remember, that I have not uſed any man-'ner of violence towards you; what need 'had I to allow you the free choice 'which part to take? if I had had a mind 'to force you, had I not the power in my 'hands? I had no more to do but command, 'to have been obeyed.'

Spa, July 16th
1717.

PETER.

The ſituation of the Czarowich's affairs, when theſe two gentlemen delivered him the Czar's letter, did not allow him to heſitate in taking the part of ſubmiſſion, the place of his retreat being diſcovered; beſides, he had no reaſon to expect that the Emperor would quarrel with the Czar, by protecting a rebellious ſon: therefore he followed the advice

advice of Meſſrs. *Tolſtoy* and *Romanzoff*, and wrote the following letter to his Czariſh majeſty, before their departure from St. *Elmi*. BOOK XII.

Moſt Gracious Sovereign and Father,

'I have received your majeſty's gracious letter from Meſſrs. *Tolſtoy* and *Romanzoff*; by which I am aſſured of your majeſty's moſt gracious pardon on my return, for leaving the country without your permiſſion. I give you moſt humble thanks, and acknowledge myſelf unworthy of all favour. I throw myſelf at your majeſty's feet, imploring your clemency. I pray you to forgive me my crimes, tho' I own I deſerve the worſt of puniſhments: but I rely on your gracious aſſurances, and give myſelf up entirely to your will and pleaſure. I leave *Naples* ſoon, with deſign to wait on your majeſty at St. *Petersburgh*, along with theſe gentlemen your majeſty has ſent. Your moſt humble, and moſt unworthy ſervant, who does not deſerve to be called your ſon.'

The Czarowich's letter to the Czar.

Naples, *October* 4th 1717.

ALEXIS.

The

BOOK XII.

The Czarowich ſet out for *Ruſſia*, and arrived at the capital, where the Czar then was, on the 11th of *February* 1718; and that ſame night he appeared before his father, with whom he had a long conference. The next day a great council was held; and on the 14th, (at break of day) the guards marched and ſurrounded the caſtle; where all the miniſters, boyars and grandees, were aſſembled in the great hall, and the eccleſiaſticks in the cathedral The Czarowich was brought as a priſoner without his ſword, into the hall; where in preſence of all the aſſembly he preſented a petition to his majeſty, and at the ſame time ſhedding a flood of tears, fell flat on his face before him. The Czar delivered the petition to Baron *Shafferoff*, the Vice-chancellor, which contained his confeſſion; then he raiſed him up, aſking him what he deſired. The prince implored his clemency and begged his life, which the Czar granted; but told him at the ſame time, that having by his behaviour rendered himſelf incapable of the ſucceſſion, he muſt now before all preſent formally renounce it; ſince it was what he had often before deſired: the Czarowich anſwered he would do whatever his majeſty pleaſed to command him. The Czar further told him, he had granted his pardon, but on condition that he ſhould diſcover his accomplices, and

Is made priſoner on his return to *Moſcow*.

and the adviſers of his flight, and what he had thereby deſigned. Upon this, the Czarowich whiſpered his father in the ear, who went with him into another room; where it is believed he informed the Czar of his adviſers, for immediately, three couriers were diſpatched to different places. The Czar having returned with his ſon into the hall, the Czarowich ſigned an act, declaring himſelf incapable of governing, and renounced for ever his right to the empire: upon which the Czar cauſed openly read his manifeſto, containing the reaſons that made him exclude Prince *Alexis* from the ſucceſſion. After this, all the miniſters, boyars, grandees, and officers preſent, ſigned an oath, (which they confirmed by kiſſing of the croſs) ſetting forth, that the Czar having by his letters patent, declared the Czarowich *Alexis* excluded from the throne, and had eſtabliſhed his ſecond ſon *Peter* his immediate ſucceſſor; they acknowledged the juſtice of his majeſty's decree, renouncing Prince *Alexis* for ever, and acknowledging Prince *Peter*; and promiſing, that they would ſupport and maintain him in his right againſt all pretenders and oppoſers, on whatſoever pretext.

Signs an act of renunciation.

Prince *Peter* acknowledged.

The Czar, with all the aſſembly, went to the cathedral; where, after having diſcourſed for ſome time on the diſobedience and

BOOK XII.

and bad conduct of his ſon, all the clergy ſigned and took the ſaid oath on the Evangeliſts. After which they were all diſmiſſed, and the Czar returned to *Prebraſinſky*. He alſo cauſed tender the oath to all who had any office, either in the army, or in the police, diſperſing his manifeſto, which gave his reaſons for excluding his ſon from the ſucceſſion.

Amongſt other articles in the Czar's manifeſto, this was one.------Upon the Czarowich's arrival at *Vienna*, the Emperor adviſed him (being well informed of his bad conduct, and after what manner he had treated his conſort, who was ſiſter to the Empreſs) to return and ſubmit to his father and ſovereign: but he repreſented, that if he returned or was delivered up to his father, who was his enemy and a tyrant, he could expect nothing but death; ſo that at laſt the Emperor granted him a place of retreat in *Naples*.

The Czarowich's act of renunciation is as follows. 'I underwritten, declare before 'GOD and on his Holy Evangel, that on 'account of the crimes I have committed a-'gainſt his Czariſh majeſty, my father and 'ſovereign, as his manifeſto more fully 'bears, I am excluded from the *Ruſſian* 'throne, and moſt juſtly, having by my 'faults and unworthineſs merited the ſame.

'I

'I oblige myſelf, and ſwear by the Al- BOOK
'mighty GOD, the Holy Trinity, as ſu- XII.
'preme judge, to ſubmit in all reſpects to
'the will and pleaſure of the Czar my
'father, that I never ſhall pretend to nor
'accept of the ſucceſſion on any pretext
'whatever: but I do hereby acknowledge
'the Czarowich, *Peter* my brother, for
'rightful and lawful ſucceſſor to the *Ruſ-*
'*ſian* monarchy: whereupon I kiſs the
'holy croſs, and ſign theſe preſents with
'my hand.'

Moſcow, Feb. 14th
1718.

ALEXIS.

After this, the Czar, the Czarowich, all the eccleſiaſtics, counſellors, boyars and miniſters, with the whole court, repaired to St. *Petersburgh*, where they arrived about the end of *February*.

The Czar was not ſatisfied with his ſon's exterior acknowledgment of his crimes, but muſt needs know his accomplices, and thoſe who adviſed him; judging that as long as they remained concealed, there was no ſafety; they might ſtill continue to impreſs the Prince with bad counſel, in hopes of aggrandizing themſelves in the event of his attaining to the ſucceſſion: therefore his majeſty told the Czarowich, that unleſs he

BOOK XII. declared to him the truth of all the particulars and circumſtances of his flight, and who were his adviſers, his pardon ſhould be null and of no effect.

The Czarowich promiſed to declare the truth, without diſguiſe, as before GOD; on which he kiſſed the crucifix and Holy Evangel. Then the Czar deſired him to do it in order and in writing, particularly to give anſwers to the following points.

Steps of the trial.

I. Was there any premeditate deſign in the anſwer you gave to the letter I wrote you, after the interrment of your ſpouſe, and to thoſe I wrote you ſince on the ſame ſubject? And ſince you always ſhewed a great forwardneſs to retire into a convent, both in your letters to me, and by word of mouth, and that now it clearly appears, that all you both wrote and ſaid was but diſſimulation, tell me with whom you adviſed and concerted thoſe matters?

The Czarowich made anſwer to the firſt point after this manner:

Moſt Clement Lord and Father,

I communicated the letter I received from your majeſty (after the interrment of my ſpouſe) to *Alexander Kekin*, and to *Mikifor Woſinſkoy*; they both adviſed me to renounce the ſucceſſion, that I might be diſcharged

charged of ſo great a burden, on account of the weakneſs of my conſtitution; they both inſiſted, that ſeeing there was no other reſource, the only part I had to chuſe was to go into a convent; which advice they gave, then left me. BOOK XII.

Alexander Kekin, ſome time after your majeſty's departure from St. *Petersburgh*, went to *Carlesbath* for his health: about a fortnight before, he came to me at the village, where I then lived, and told me that he was going to find out a place for me. I waited there with a deſign to eſcape as ſoon as I had advice from him.

I ſpoke alſo to Prince *Baſil Dolgoruky*, and to Count *Theodore Apraxin*, before I returned an anſwer to your majeſty. I begged of them, that when you ſpoke with them concerning me, they would adviſe you to deprive me of the ſucceſſion, and to allow me to live in ſome country place, to paſs the reſt of my days in peace and quiet. Count *Theodore* told me, that if your majeſty ſpoke with him on that ſubject, he ſhould give you that advice. Prince *Baſil* ſaid much the ſame; adding, 'Give him 'a thouſand promiſes, who knows what 'may happen? You know the proverb, 'The time will come, but GOD knows 'when.'

BOOK XII.

Some time after, Prince *Baſil* came to me, deſiring in your name to ſee the letter your majeſty had wrote me; which I ſhowed him: then he told me he had ſpoke to your majeſty, who (he thought) deſigned to deprive me of the ſucceſſion, and that you ſeemed well pleaſed with my anſwer. He aſked if I had made mention of my brother in the terms he had adviſed me? I told him I had: 'then,' ſaid he, 'be eaſy, you 'have nothing more to diſquiet you.' *Kekin* having told me that there were ſpies at court, who informed your majeſty of all who came to ſee me; I aſked him how he knew that? He aſſured me he had it from ſome of thoſe about your majeſty, but named no body. So thereafter I was obliged to ſend my letters to him to be peruſed and corrected, before I ſent them to you. *Kekin* alſo adviſed me to renounce the ſucceſſion, ſaying, that would make me eaſy, ſince the weakneſs of my conſtitution could never allow me to bear ſo weighty a burden. *Necephorus* ſaid likeways, 'What 'needs you value the ſucceſſion, provided 'you have wherewith to live a retired quiet 'life?'

I conſulted the ſame *Kekin* and *Necephorus* on the ſecond letter I wrote your majeſty: they ſaid to me, among other diſcourſe

courſe which I do not ſo well remember, that I ought to retire into the convent, for the cowl was not nailed to one's head; it might be thrown off, and hung upon a hook; that this would make me eaſy in the mean time, 'and for hereafter,' added they, 'who knows what may happen?'

Necephorus ſaid ſome time after, that there was no other expedient, I muſt retire into the convent, then tell my confeſſor to acquaint the metropolitan of *Reſan* that I was forced to take that reſolution, that he might know I did not make it my choice, nor was put there for crimes.

Prince *George Trubetzkoy*, and the Czarowich of *Siberia*, were alſo in the knowledge of the above-mentioned ſecond letter I ſent your majeſty. Prince *Trubetkzoy* aſked me ſome weeks after, what paper your majeſty put in my hands when he was preſent? Were the contents of it good or bad? and after I had told him the ſubject, and my anſwer, he ſaid, I did very well in renouncing the ſucceſſion, and bid me remember that there was greater ſubject of affliction found in the midſt of grandeur and riches, than in a private ſtate. I told him he was in the right: I was ſo fully determined to retire into the convent, that I left in Prince *James Dolgoruky*'s hand a good

BOOK XII.

good ſum of ducats, to be given to **Euphroſine*, the woman I kept, for her maintenance whilſt I was in the convent; which is known to *Nicephor Baſemſky*, *John Afonaſſieff*, and my confeſſor *George* who knew nothing of my flight.

II. Had you no diſcourſe with any perſons during my late illneſs at St. *Petersburgh*, wherein they ſhewed a forwardneſs to join you in caſe I had died?

I did not hear one word from any perſons on that ſubject during your illneſs.

III. How long is it ſince you deſigned to put the project of your flight in execution? for ſince you did it ſo ſuddenly, one would think that it was premeditated ſome time before. Declare openly the real matter of fact; with whom, in what place, if by word of mouth or letters, and by what channel? further, By whoſe advice did you write that fraudulent letter on your journey? Who aſſiſted you, and for what reaſon did you write it? With whom did you correſpond during your journey?

I did talk often, and at different times with the ſaid *Kekin*, even before I received your

* She was a *Finland* captive. It is ſaid the Czar was ſo much pleaſed with the honeſty of her confeſſion, that he cauſed offer her a good ſum of money, if ſhe had a mind to marry: but that ſhe refuſed it, ſaying, 'ſhe had once been obliged to 'ſatisfy the will of a Prince to ſave her life from a dagger, but 'no other man ſhou'd ever come near her.

your majeſty's letters and returned anſwers. The ſubſtance of his diſcourſe was as follows: that if I chanced to go into ſome foreign country, I ought to continue there in ſome place, as much to live in peace as to be at a diſtance from all affairs. Nevertheleſs I was not very forward in putting that deſign in execution, but as I took journey for *Carlesbath*, *Kekin* ſaid thus: 'As ſoon 'as you find yourſelf recovered, write to 'your father that you was adviſed by the 'phyſicians to uſe the waters in the ſpring; 'after which you may paſs into *Holland*, 'thereafter through *France*, into *Italy*, and 'after this manner you may make your 'journey continue for ſeveral years.' I wrote to him from *Carlesbath* to have his advice, if I ſhould then undertake what had been concerted betwixt us. 'He anſwered, 'How can you imagine to undertake that 'without your fathers conſent? you ought 'to be afraid of offending him, therefore 'write to him, for his permiſſion; but for-'get not your affairs.'

I knew not what he meant by theſe laſt words, but after I had given over the deſign of going into *Holland* and had come back to St. *Petersburgh* (*Kekin* having been ſent into baniſhment for ſome miſdemeanours, but being returned again and pardoned), I had occaſion to talk with him, when he aſked

me

BOOK XII. me if I had ſeen any perſon from the court of *France?* I told him no. He replied, 'you are in the wrong, you ſhould have 'ſpoke with ſome perſon belonging to that 'court, the King is a Prince of a great ſoul, 'he gives protection to other kings, and 'would not have refuſed it to you.'

I aſked him what he meant by that part of his letter, 'that I ought not to forget 'my affairs.' He anſwered, he meant that I ſhould have retired into *France*, tho' he durſt not write me ſo much; but that I might have found it out my ſelf.

As to my flight, I never did deliberate on that ſubject with any; but having received your letter from *Copenhagen*, and ſeeing by it I could depart from St. *Petersburgh*, in obedience to your commands, without ſuſpicion; and in conſequence of the former communing betwixt *Kekin* and me, I reſolved to go into the Emperor's dominions, or to *Venice* or *Swiſſerland*, without aſking advice or diſcovering my deſign to any but *Aſſonaſſieff*, whom I informed that I was reſolved to go and conceal my ſelf for a time in ſome of theſe above-mentioned places, without letting him know which; not being myſelf fully determined.

I told him further; that I had formerly ſpoke on this ſubject with *Kekin*, who perhaps had found out a place for me, ſeeing he was

was then in thoſe parts, and when I ſhould meet with him he would adviſe me to what place I ſhould go, and if I ſhould not meet with him, I would aſſuredly go into one or other of the forementioned. BOOK XII.

I never before this diſcourſed with *John Affonaſſieff* on this ſubject, or any other perſon except *Kekin*, either by word or writing, or any other means, not even with my domeſticks. *Affonaſſieff* told me that he was reſolved to keep my ſecret; 'but woe 'to us, added he, if you flinch;' therefore 'reflect well on what you do.'

When I met with *Kekin* at *Libaw*, I aſked if he had found out a place for me? he told me he had: 'Go to *Vienna*,' ſaid he, 'and put yourſelf under the Emperor's pro-'tection, he will not deliver you up.' I aſked him what affair had taken him to *Vienna*, and if it was on my account? He told me, he had no buſineſs there but mine; that having aſked leave of princeſs *Maria Alexowna* to go that place, ſhe had allowed him, and at the ſame time deſired him to perſuade Prince *Alexander Profforoſky* to return to his own family.

Prince *Alexander Proſoroſky* was one of the young men of quality, the Czar firſt ſent abroad; who after he had got a taſte of the living in other countries, did not care for returning ſoon.

BOOK XII.

I aſked him how I ſhould behave, if any perſon were ſent to meet me, either at *Dantzick*, or *Koningsberg?* He told me to eſcape in the night, and to take only one ſervant with me, happen to the baggage what might: as to the fraudulent letter, it was written at *Libaw* by *Kekins*'s advice, and dated at *Koningsberg*, that it might not be ſuſpected he had a hand in it; for he came and viſited me openly. The letter was given to Prince *Shacoffſkoy* captain of the *Simeinoſkoy* regiment of guards, with orders to ſend it by the poſt; but the Captain knew nothing of our affairs, for the deſign of writing that letter was to ſtop any body from being ſent to meet me.

Kekin alſo perſuaded me to write a letter to *John Affonaſſieff* (who I ſaid was in the knowledge of what had been concerted betwixt him and me), that he might upon ſight follow me, and that he ſhould find at *Dantzick*, at the poſt-office, an addreſs where to find me. *Kekin* reaſoned after this manner: 'if *Affonaſſieff* leaves St. *Petersburgh*, 'this affair cannot be diſcovered, for ex- 'cept us two and him, no perſon knows 'any thing of the matter; as for me (con- 'tinued he) my being abſent from St. *Pe- 'tersburgh* when you left it, will make no 'body ſuſpect me; but if *Affonaſſieff* ſtays there,

'there, I'm afraid he will not have diſcretion 'enough to conceal it.'

I told him I was afraid that *Affonaſſieff*, would not leave St. *Petersburgh* on my letter. (He replied), 'In that caſe you 'ſhould write him a ſecond; by which it 'might be underſtood that you had never 'let him into the knowledge of the affair, 'and that you had only taken that reſoluti-'on after your departure from St. *Peters-'burg*, and that he would not forget to 'bring your jewels along with him.' I do not remember the name of the town where he deſired me to write to *Affonaſſieff* to join me. *Kekin* added, 'I ſhall bid him ſhew 'your letter to Prince *Menzekoff*, as if he 'diſcovered to him your ſecret, which will 'remove all ſuſpicion of him.'

He further told me to write a letter of thanks to Prince *Baſil Dolgoruky* for his friendſhip, promiſing to acknowledge it when the time offered; 'for (ſaid *Kekin*) 'if they ſuſpect me to have had a hand in 'your flight I ſhall then expoſe your letter 'to Prince *Baſil*, as if I had intercepted it; 'which will ſeem to ſhow a concert betwixt 'you and him, by your giving him thanks 'for all civilities.'

Kekin took this letter with him; I know not if he delivered it: he alſo deſired me to write a letter to Prince *Menzekoff* to thank him

BOOK XII.

him for adviſing me to take my miſtreſs along, and to deſire him to give an order for poſt-horſes to *Affonaſſieff*; 'perhaps (added '*Kekin*) he will ſhow this letter to your fa-'ther, who probably will ſuſpect his having 'had ſome knowledge of your flight.'

With regard to Prince *Menzekoff*, matters paſſed after this manner. As I went to ſee him before my departure, he aſked me where I deſigned to leave my miſtreſs? I told him I would take her with me the length of *Riga*, and from thence I would ſend her back to St. *Petersburgh*. He ſaid I would do better to take her with me the whole way. My deſign from the beginning was to do ſo, tho' I gave it out otherways, that they might not ſuſpect my intentions: neither did I let her into the ſecret, leſt ſhe might through inadvertency diſcover any part of it. Prince *Menzekoff* knew nothing of my eſcape; neither did I communicate that deſign to Prince *Baſil Dolgoruky*. At parting with *Kekin*, he begged I would write to him when I was out of danger, and do it after this manner, 'I paſſed happily 'through *Dantzick* without danger from 'the confederates;' write no more (ſaid he) we'll underſtand the reſt.

Accordingly, I wrote thoſe letters from *Stuckgard*; and to remove all ſuſpicion againſt the perſons, I wrote to ſeveral others,

after

after the ſame manner, who were not in the knowledge of my flight; particularly to *Nicephorus Baſomſky*, *Theodore Dubrofsky*, and the Czarowich of *Siberia*. BOOK XII.

The letters were all ſent to *Riga*, to Prince *Peter Galitzin*'s care, to forward them to St. *Petersburgh*: he knew nothing of my flight. *Kekin* ſaid moreover, at parting, 'If your father ſends any perſon 'to perſuade you to return, do it not; for 'if you do, he will certainly ſtrike off your 'head publickly.'

IV. Did you receive no letters on your journey, or did you not keep correſpondence with any perſon directly nor indirectly, either in *Ruſſia*, or elſewhere, on what might concern you and me?

I received no letters on my journey, neither from *Ruſſia* nor elſewhere, nor had any correſpondence directly or indirectly, except the account I had from Count *Schonburn* at *Eherenberg*, ſhewing that I was under the protection of the Emperor, where I ought to live retired. Afterwards I had accounts that Mr. *Weſeloffsky* had ſpoke of me at *Vienna*, and that the imperial reſident at St. *Petersburgh* had wrote, that after my departure, great enquiry was made among my domeſtics; alſo, that there was a mutiny in the army in *Mecklinburgh*, particularly among the guards, which were moſtly

BOOK XII. moſtly compoſed of nobility; that they had a deſign againſt your majeſty's life, and were to ſend the Empreſs *Katharine*, with her ſon, to the place where the firſt Empreſs is confined, who was to be brought back to *Moſcow*, and myſelf ſet on the throne: this letter is among my other papers with my baggage. I received another letter from Count *Schonburn*, on the ſubject of my journey from *Naples*: beſides theſe I never had any accounts, nor knew what was doing, but what I could learn from the public papers.

V. When, and for what end was the *Greek* prieſt along with you?

There never was any *Greek* prieſt with me, from the time I left St. *Petersburgh*, until Meſſrs. *Tolſtoy* and *Romanzoff* came to me at *Naples*.

VI. What was the ſubſtance of the letter you ſaid the imperial miniſter forced you to write? To whom did you give it? And is it true that he compelled you to write it?

Count *Schonburn*'s Secretary, Mr. *Keil*, forced me to write letters to the ſenate and the archbiſhops, alledging there were accounts in *Ruſſia* that I was dead, and others believed that I was taken and ſent into *Siberia*; 'therefore, write (ſaid he) 'and let them know how you do, or we'll 'have nothing to do with you.' So that being

being threatned by the Secretary after that manner, I wrote to the ſenate and the two archbiſhops, *viz.* of *Roſtow* and *Kouditz*, much in the following words. 'I believe 'you, as well as all others, were much ſur-'prized at my departure unknown to every 'body: it was the ill uſage I met with, 'which was puſhed to that height, as to 'force me into a convent; but GOD in his 'goodneſs has taken care of me. I am 'under the protection of a great Prince, till 'it pleaſe GOD to diſpoſe matters, that I 'may return in ſafety: in the mean time, 'I hope you will not forget me; and if 'any of thoſe who wiſh me out of the 'world publiſh accounts that I am dead, 'give no credit to them, but be aſſured 'that I am in perfect health, thanks to 'GOD, and my benefactors, who protect 'me, and who have promiſed not to aban-'don, but to aſſiſt me in all my wants. I 'am, while I live, full of good wiſhes to-'wards you and the whole country.'

This was the ſubſtance of the letters I delivered to the Secretary, who told me he was going to *Vienna*, and would take care to forward them; after which, I was ſent to the caſtle of St. *Elmi*.

On my arrival at *Vienna*, I addreſſed myſelf to Count *Schonburn* for protection. He told me, he would go and acquaint the Emperor:

BOOK XII.

Emperor: 'in the mean time (ſaid he), take 'care that * Mr. *Weſſelofsky* does not ſee 'you.' On his return from the Emperor, he told me, that he was not determined about me, but had ordered him to confer with Prince *Eugene* and Count *Staremberg*. It was then reſolved to take me under protection, and ſend me to ſome caſtle at a diſtance: the Count added, 'You cannot con-'tinue at this place, where you will be 'immediately known, eſpecially to Mr. '*Weſſelofsky:* the Emperor will not aban-'don you, but on the contrary, on your 'father's death, will aſſiſt you with an 'armed force to mount the throne.' I told him, I did not want that, but only the Emperor's protection.

VII. Declare to us, and diſcover all you know, that may have any relation to this affair, tho' it be not expreſſed here, and purge yourſelf as if you were at confeſſion: if you conceal any the leaſt thing that I may hereafter come to the knowledge of, blame yourſelf; for in that caſe, the pardon that was granted you ſhall be null and void.

I ſhall declare all that I know that has any relation to this affair. Prince *Menzekoff* gave me a thouſand ducats, and the ſenators as much, when I took leave of them:

*Mr. *Weſſelofsky* was the Czar's miniſter at *Vienna*.

them: I borrowed alſo from *Illia Iſacow*, five thouſand ducats in gold, and two thouſand in ſilver: neither Prince *Menzekoff*, the ſenators, nor *Illia Iſacow*, knew any thing of my deſign. I only told them, on my departure from St. *Petersburgh*, that I was going to meet you at *Copenhagen*. It was *Affonaſſieff* that adviſed me to borrow money from *Illia Iſacow*: what I heard further, at different times, and on different occaſions, is as follows. The Czarowich of *Siberia* told me, that he had heard from *Michael Samarin*, that there would be ſoon a change of circumſtances: 'Will you be 'kind to me (ſaid he) when it is well with 'you? for all that *Samarin* prognoſticates 'actually happeneth:' he did not explain to me what this change would be. The ſame perſon told me in *March* (1716), that there would be a change on the 1ſt of *April*; and when I aſked him what this change would be? He ſaid, either the Czar would die, or St. *Petersburgh* be deſtroyed; and that he had ſeen it in a dream. After theſe days were paſt, I aſked him how it came that none of theſe things had happened? He ſaid, they might happen ſome other year on that very day; and that he did not tell me the year, but the day.

Nicephor Waſemſkhy, paſſing from *Moſcow* to *Thorne*, told me that he had heard

BOOK XII.

from *Alexander Sergeoff*, that the Czar could not live above five years; but he did not tell me his reaſon for ſo ſaying.

As I was in the neighbourhood of *Stetin*, Prince *Baſil Dolgoruky* being on horſeback, ſpoke to me, and ſaid, that if the Empreſs *Katharine* was not with the Czar, he could not live with him, on account of his ſevere and harſh temper; and that for his part, he would be one of the firſt to betray him. All which has declared,

Your moſt humble

Servant and Son,

ALEXIS.

Beſides this confeſſion, the Czarowich gave another writing by way of ſupplement, mentioning ſome points he had forgot.

Being in converſation with *Theodore Dubroſsky*, on my departure, he ſaid, 'Are you going to your father? Go in the name of 'GOD.' I told him I was going, but GOD knows if it be to him, or elſewhere. He replied, 'Many in your ſituation have found 'their ſafety in their flight. I believe your 'friends will not deſert you.'

Naritskin having met me betwixt *Memel* and *Koningsberg*, ſaid I was ill adviſed to return, that I ſhould have continued where

I was. 'Thoſe who are faithful to you (ſaid he) are of that opinion, and *Kekin* wrote you as much; but at preſent there is no help for it, things muſt take their courſe.' BOOK XII.

John Aſſonaſſief before my departure, when I informed him of my deſign, brought me orders to ſign about my domeſtic affairs, as I uſed to do before I took a journey. I aſked what was the uſe of ſigning any thing of that kind, ſeeing I was reſolved not to return? He ſaid, for his juſtification. He likeways propoſed that I ſhould ſend towards *Copenhagen*, ſome part of my equipage: it was likeways he who adviſed me to carry my miſtreſs along, but that neither ſhe, nor any of my domeſtics ſhould know any thing of my real deſign; all which I did by his advice.------All this the Czarowich declared, after the Czar had begun to examine the criminals, leſt he ſhould have come to the knowledge thereof from others.

The Czarowich diſcovered to the Czar ſome of the perſons who had adviſed him to eſcape. He wrote their names with his own hand, but did not name all. He alſo concealed the rebellion, and treaſonable practices he was carrying on; which was clearly made out by many of their own confeſſions.

BOOK XII. He alſo concealed ſeveral letters he had received from *Ruſſia*, and from the imperial miniſter Count *Schonburn*, having only acknowledged the receipt of two at *Eherenberg*; but when his miſtreſs and his equipage arrived, all theſe letters were found among his papers. Count *Schonburn* in his third letter, acquainted the Czarowich that in *Ruſſia* it was currently reported he was loſt, being forced to flee from his father's cruelty; that others ſaid, he was killed by his order; and that ſome gave out as if he had been murdered by robbers on the highway; in which letter he incloſed another, (written at St. *Petersburgh*) adviſing the unhappy Prince to keep himſelf as private as poſſible, for that the Czar his father would not fail, after his return from *Holland*, to cauſe make an exact ſearch for him.

Nevertheleſs the Czarowich, in his confeſſion to his father, made no mention of this letter and advice; neither was it true that the Secretary *Keil* had forced him to write letters to the ſenate, and biſhops. He did it of his own accord: the copies of all theſe letters were found in his baggage.

The letters to the ſenate and archbiſhops, are much the ſame with what he declared in his confeſſion; but to the archbiſhops, he adds, 'I believe you are not ignorant,

'that

'that this proceeds from the ſame perſon 'who treated my mother after the ſame 'manner:' (meaning the deſign of ſending him to the convent) then, ſpeaking of his return, 'he begs the Archbiſhop not to a-'abandon him *at preſent.*' The word *at preſent* was twice blotted out, and twice reſtored.

Thereafter, when the Czarowich came to underſtand that many of the criminals had confeſſed ſeveral articles he had omitted in his firſt confeſſion, he preſented another to the Czar.

The CONFESSIONS of others.

Theodore Dubrofsky, being interrogated, acknowledged, that he was in the knowledge of the Czarowich's flight, and had often communed with him on that ſubject, and had adviſed him thereto; tho' the Czarowich, as he was interrogated, declared, that *Dubrofsky* knew nothing of his flight, nor of his conferences with *Kekin*.

Simon Naritskin alſo declared, that having met with the Czarowich betwixt *Memel* and *Koningsberg*, he told him from *Kekin*, that he did ill to return, and that he could have remained where he was.

Likeways, the Biſhop of *Roſtow* acknowledged, that both the depoſed Empreſs, and Princeſs

BOOK XII.

Princeſs *Maria Alexowna*, were in the ſecret of the Czarowich's flight, and deſigns.--- All which, and much more did the Czarowich conceal at his examination.

The 27th of *February*, in a writing the Czarowich preſented to his father, he confeſſed, that having one day met with the Princeſs *Maria Alexowna*, their diſcourſe turned upon the treatment of his mother, the depoſed Empreſs; but he did not own that they had any knowledge of his flight.

John Affonaſſief and *Theodore Eberlakoff*, declared, that the Czarowich had been heard to ſwear he would cauſe impale Prince *Menzekoff*, as alſo his ſiſter-in-law *Barbara Arſenceff*, and *Anniſe Tolſtoy*; and being in paſſion one day againſt Count *Golofkin* the Chancellor, and Prince *George Trubelſkoy*, who had perſuaded him to marry his deceaſed ſpouſe, the devil of a woman, (as he called her): he ſwore, that nothing but death could prevent his cauſing them to pay for it; and that he ſhould cauſe cut off *Alexander Golofkin*'s head by the hand of the executioner. *Affonaſſieff* aſking the Czarowich how he durſt ſpeak after that manner? he anſwered, 'I ſpit upon all 'others; may the common people proſper: 'when I find my time, in my father's ab-'ſence, I ſhall ſpeak a word into the ears 'of the archbiſhops, and they to the infe-'rior

'rior clergy and curates, who will tell their 'pariſhoners; and theſe I am ſure will 'bring me to the throne, in ſpite of all 'oppoſers.' He declared further, that on many occaſions the Czarowich uſed to ſay, 'Remember my words, you ſhall ſee that 'St. *Petersburgh* ſhall not be ours long; 'and that he would chooſe to be in a fever, 'rather than in company with his father, 'on any extraordinary occaſion.' *Eberlakof* declared, he heard him ſay, he was at a great loſs that he had not followed *Kekin*'s advice, in making an eſcape ſome time before into *France*, where he would have paſſed his time with greater tranquillity and pleaſure; nay, rather in the convent of St. *Michael* at *Kiow*, then here. He alſo declared, that the Czarowich would often take phyſic, and counterfeit an indiſpoſition, rather than accompany his father on any journey, or public occaſion.

The Czarowich's miſtreſs being interrogated about letters, and of all ſhe knew of his affairs, declared, that ſhe had ſeen the Czarowich write letters whilſt in the caſtle of St. *Elmi*, particularly one to an Archbiſhop in the *Ruſſian* language; but to whom ſhe could not tell, not having ſeen the direction; and that he had alſo wrote letters to the Emperor, complaining of the Czar: that ſhe had heard him ſay, on the report

BOOK XII.

report of the mutiny of the *Ruſſian* troops in *Mechlinburgh*, 'Do you not ſee that 'GOD Almighty is fighting for us?' And as to his flight, ſhe had heard him ſay, that four perſons were in the knowledge of of it; amongſt whom was the Princeſs *Maria Alexowna*, whom he told at parting, he was going to abſcond; that he was diſpleaſed with his father's courtiers, and would turn them all off, and chuſe new ones to his own liking; that when he uſed to read in the Gazettes that all was quiet at St. *Petersburgh*, he ſaid, 'This means ſomething, 'my father is either dead, or there is a 'rebellion ſome where;' that he had ſaid, whilſt at *Eherenberg*, he would retire into ſome hanſe-town, having been adviſed thereto by *Dubrofsky* and others.

The Czarowich examined again.

The Czarowich on the 20th of *May*, being queſtioned on theſe points, owned that he had wrote the Emperor, complaining of his father, but that he had not ſent the letter; and denied his having written from the caſtle to the archbiſhops; but owned his acquainting Princeſs *Maria* with his flight, in theſe terms: 'I deſign to make 'my eſcape;' but that he did not care to diſcover her out of pity; that he had deſignedly concealed *Dubrofsky*, becauſe when they conferred together, there was no body preſent: he alſo declared, that what he had

ſaid

ſaid as to the clergy and commonalty was when he was drunk, and that he hardly remembered it; alſo, that he was in paſſion when he ſpoke of Count *Gollofkin*, his ſon, and Prince *Trubetskoy*; that all the world knew he had married of choice, which can be ſufficienty proven by the repeated letters he had wrote to his father for his conſent; that he had ſometimes taken medicines purpoſely to make himſelf ſick, to ſhun his father's company. That he had not heard of the ſermon preached at *Moſcow* by the Archbiſhop of *Reſan*, till he was informed thereof by Prince *Baſil Dolgoruky* and *Theodore Glebow*, who acquainted him that the Archbiſhop had ſpoke diſadvantageouſly of him, and that the ſenators had obliged him to give them a copy of the ſermon. He owned that letters had paſſed betwixt him and that prelate, tho' ſeldom, to prevent ſuſpicion.

He ſaid concerning the letters he had wrote to the ſenate and archbiſhops, he thought that would give no ground for an accuſation againſt them, they being ſo numerous, and that nothing could be made out againſt them, ſince he had not communicated any thing of his deſign to them; and that when he wrote the archbiſhops concerning his returning, he meant it only after his father's death.

BOOK XII. In the Czarowich's ſecond confeſſion, (which was emitted about the middle of *May*) he declared, that Lieutenant-general *Bower*, who was his friend, being in *Poland* with his command, at the time of his eſcape, and believing that his father had but ſhort time to live, (having had accounts he had fallen ill of an epilepſy) he conſequently judged that he could not hold out above two years; in which event, he could eaſily go from the Emperor's dominions into *Poland*; and from thence, being joined by *Bower*, he could march into the *Ukraine*; where he was perſuaded they all would join, and declare for him; and that at *Moſcow*, the Princeſs *Maria*, the archbiſhops, and all ranks of people, would do the ſame. Moreover, that he was reſolved not to return during his father's life, but after the manner he did, on promiſe of his moſt gracious pardon.------The contrary of all which was clearly made out, as will appear hereafter.

The Czarowich was examined thereafter on the following articles, drawn up by the Czar.

I. Who of the laity were in the knowledge of your deſign, and adviſed you thereto? What paſſed betwixt you and them on that ſubject?

I know of none that had any knowledge of my ill deſign, but thoſe I have already mentioned. BOOK XII.

II. What *Affonaſſieff* had declared concerning the rebellion, was it to be in my time or after?

When I ſpoke with *Affonaſſieff* on the ſubject of the rebellion, I was in drink, and believed there was to be one.

III. What is the meaning of the word *at preſent*, mentioned in your letter to the archbiſhops?

The meaning of it was, that they ſhould diſperſe my letter amongſt the people, which I believed would engage them the more to me; but on ſecond thoughts, not thinking that word proper, I defaced it.

IV. When you was informed that there was a revolt amongſt the troops in *Mechlinburgh*, did you not rejoice thereat, and ſaid, 'GOD does not allow affairs to go on 'according to my father's wiſhes?'

When I was told of the revolt in *Mechlinburgh*, I ſaid indeed, that GOD would not permit things to go on as my father wiſhed. And if theſe accounts had been true, I would have joined the male-contents if they had called me; but I had not as yet taken that reſolution, nor would I have gone, unleſs I had found them ſtrong enough: I moreover thought they would not declare

BOOK XII.

for me, ſo long as you lived; that they were reſolved to take your life, and not to dethrone you; tho' even in your lifetime, if they had called me, I probably would have joined them.

Seeing the Czarowich in this laſt anſwer, owned that he had entertained criminal thoughts againſt his father, if occaſion had offered, even during his life, the Czar ordered Meſſrs. *Tolſtoy* and *Butterlin* to examine him further; particularly on the expreſſion '*at preſent*, not to abandon him.'

The Czarowich declared, that it was in the ſenſe he had already ſaid; and ſince he had acknowledged in the laſt article, that if the male-contents had called him he would have joined them at any time, tho' during his father's life; that he had inſerted the word *at preſent*, in the view that when things were made public amongſt the people, they might declare for him.

His majeſty the Czar, in his letter to his ſon, had promiſed not only to pardon him for his flight, but alſo to grant him a general indemnity for all he had been guilty of before; but ſtill on condition he made a true and ample diſcovery of his accomplices, of whatſoever quality or rank; declaring at the ſame time, that if he concealed either perſons or facts, his pardon ſhould be of no effect.

Nevertheleſs,

Nevertheleſs, it has been clearly made out by the preceeding examinations, and the confeſſion of others, as well as his own, that he concealed not only his aſſociates, but the principal facts, and his pernicious deſigns of joining the rebels even in his father's life-time; which 'tis probable he never would have acknowledged, had not his accomplices owned thoſe crimes before he mentioned them.

But that all the world might be ſatisfied, the Czar examined his ſon a-new, on all the crimes which had been proved againſt him; and letters were produced under his own hand diſcovering the facts. The Czarowich at laſt, in preſence of the whole aſſembly of the ſtates and eccleſiaſtics, acknowledged himſelf guilty of all that was advanced againſt him.

The Czarowich owns his guilt.

The audience being ended, and the Czarowich carried back to his confinement, his majeſty declared his will to the clergy in the following manner:

'You have been witneſſes to an ample 'deduction of crimes, almoſt unprecedented, whereof my ſon is guilty, and has 'committed againſt us, his father and ſove'reign. Tho' according to all divine and 'human laws, particularly theſe of *Ruſſia*, 'which exclude all juriſdiction, even a'mongſt private perſons, betwixt a father 'and

BOOK XII.

The Czar's declaration to the metropolitans and archbiſhops, &c.

'and his ſon, we have an abſolute and uncontroulable power to judge our ſon for his crimes, according to our will and pleaſure, without aſking counſel of any; yet ſince men commonly do not ſee ſo clearly into their own affairs as they do into other peoples, and that the moſt expert phyſicians do not preſcribe medicines to themſelves, but apply to others: ſo we having the fear of GOD before our eyes, do lay before you our diſtemper, and aſk advice, for fear of eternal puniſhment, not knowing exactly the nature of the diſeaſe.

'We have given our oath before GOD and his judgment, to pardon our ſon, which we have ſince confirmed by word of mouth, in caſe he told the truth.

'And tho' our ſon has violated his promiſe, in concealing the moſt important facts, and deſigns of rebellion againſt us, his ſovereign and father; yet that we may proceed ſolidly, and fulfil our obligations as far as we are able, both before GOD and man; and tho' the affair in queſtion does not belong to the ſpiritual juriſdiction, but to the civil, to whoſe impartial ſentence we have remitted it this day by our declaration: nevertheleſs, we want to procure to ourſelves, all the light that ought to be had in ſuch caſes.

'We

'We remember that part of the word of GOD, where we are enjoined to aſk the ſentiments of the church, to know what GOD ordains, as it is written in the xvii. chap. of *Exodus*. We deſire of you, archbiſhops, and other eccleſiaſtics, as doctors, and interpreters of the word of GOD, not to pronounce judgment, but to examine, and give unto us right inſtruction according to holy writ, in the like caſes, to know what kind of puniſhment ought to be inflicted on our ſon for his crimes, (which reſemble that of *Abſalom*) according to examples and precepts in holy writ. Theſe inſtructions you are to give us, ſubſcribed by each of you, that we may be ſufficiently enlightned in this affair, to the diſcharge of our conſcience.

'We therefore put our confidence in you as guardians of the divine laws, agreeable to your dignity, as faithful paſtors of the Chriſtian flock, and well affected towards your country. We moreover adjure you by the judgments of GOD, and by your conſecration, to proceed in this affair without diſſimulation and fear.'

BOOK XII.

The Czar's declaration to his miniſters, ſenators, and the ſtates, both civil and military, was the ſame with the former, till near the end, where he ſays: 'I deſire you to think ſeriouſly on this affair, to examine

The declaration to the ſe-

BOOK XII.

nators, &c. much like the other.

'examine it with attention, and judge what 'punishment our son's rebellion and crimes 'deserve, without flattery, or being afraid 'that if you should adjudge to him a mo-'derate punishment I should be offended; 'for I swear to you by the great GOD, 'and his judgment, that you have absolute-'ly nothing to fear.

'Make no reflection neither, that you 'are to give sentence on the son of your 'sovereign; but without regard to persons, 'do justice, and lose not your own souls, 'nor mine, that we may have nothing to 'reproach ourselves with at the terrible 'judgment day, and that our country may 'suffer no prejudice.'

On the 16th of *June*, the privy-counsellor Mr. *Tolstoy*, declared by his majesty's orders to the ministers, senators, and the rest of the states there assembled; that seeing he had charged them with the process of his son *Alexis*, that they might pronounce judgment; he wanted it should be done in all requisite form, and after examination; therefore his majesty authorized them, and gave them power, to examine the Czarowich *Alexis*, not only on the points already discussed, but after what manner they thought proper.

The ministers, counsellors, and the other states, after having received this express order,

der, and conſidered the points already diſ- BOOK
cuſſed, agreed to interrogate the Czarowich XII.
accordingly. And having cited him to ap-
pear before the tribunal, they roſe up and
ſaid to him, they were extremely ſorry for
the occaſion of their meeting, but that ha-
ving received orders from his majeſty, to
interrogate him on ſeveral points that re-
mained undetermined, without having re-
gard to his being the ſon of their moſt gra-
cious ſovereign, they intreated he would
be pleaſed to anſwer without reſerve, to the
points they were to lay before him.

I. How he came to ſay to his miſtreſs that there was a rebellion in the neighbourhood of *Moſcow?* Was it not by a letter from *Bleyer*, incloſed to *Schonburn?* that he ſhould declare from whom he had theſe accounts.

II. On what occaſion had he ſpoke to *John Affonaſſieff* of the confidence he had in the commonalty? And at what time he was to put in execution theſe words, 'When I ſee my time, in abſence of my 'father, I'll ſound a word in the ear of 'the Archbiſhop?' In what Archbiſhop did he confide moſt? for his miſtreſs declared, that he ſpoke very much in favour of an Archbiſhop, without naming him.

BOOK XII. III. For what reaſon, and on what grounds did he ſay, 'that St. *Petersburgh* 'ſhould not be long ours?'

The Czarowich replied to the firſt, thus: *Bleyer* the imperial reſident at St. *Petersburgh*, wrote to Count *Schonburn* Vice-chancellor of the empire, that * *Abraham Lupochin* had deſired him to come and ſee him, and had aſked where I then was, and if he had no accounts of me? giving him at the ſame time to underſtand, that they were at St. *Petersburgh* in great concern for me; and that in and about the city of *Moſcow*, they were already in motion, there being many different accounts of me.

This letter of *Bleyer*'s to Count *Schonburn* was ſent by the Count to the Czarowich, who after reading it, put it in the fire. It was from this letter that the Czarowich had ſaid to his miſtreſs, 'there is 'already a rebellion about *Moſcow*.'

As to the other points which *John Affonaſſieff* had confeſſed and charged the Czarowich with, 'that he would ſpeak a word 'in the ear of the Archbiſhop, *&c.*' he ſaid it was only, that he underſtood from moſt perſons that he was liked by the populace, particularly from *Nicephor Baſemſkoy*, and his confeſſor *James*; that when they

* Uncle to the Czarowich by the mother.

they drank his health, it was always under the name of The hopes of *Ruſſia*, and that his ſaying, 'St. *Petersburgh* would not be 'ours long,' meant that the *Swedes* might get it reſtored, as the *Turks* had got *Aſoph*. BOOK XII.

After which, the Czarowich being diſmiſſed, the aſſembly proceeded to examine the ſcriptures, both the Old and New Teſtament; as alſo the conſtitutions of the empire, civil and military, applicable to the preſent caſe, to judge what puniſhment theſe tranſgreſſions deſerved. The aſſembly ſearch the ſcriptures, &c.

Out of the Old Teſtament, *Leviticus*, chap. xx. *Duteronomy*, chap. xxi.

Out of the New Teſtament, St. *Matthew*, chap. xv. ver. 1. St. *Mark*, chap. vii. ver. 9. *Romans*, i. ver. 28. *Epheſians*, vi. ver. 1.

From the conſtitutions of the *Ruſſian* empire, Stat. I. 'If any perſon forms 'a bad deſign againſt the Czar, prejudicial 'to him any manner of way, and that it 'can be made appear, he deſigned to put 'his pernicious deſign in execution, he is 'after being convicted, to ſuffer death.'

Stat. II. 'If any perſon raiſes forces a-'gainſt the Czar, with a view to deſtroy 'him, and uſurp the throne, either by in-'teſtine or foreign war; alſo all who ei-'ther join or keep correſpondence with 'ſuch a perſon, are to be put to death, af-'ter the treaſon is made appear.'

BOOK XII.

From *Peter* the Great, his military laws, printed at St. *Petersburgh*, *Anno* 1717. chap. III. art. 19. 'If any perſon raiſes 'troops, or takes arms againſt his majeſty, 'or forms a deſign to take him priſoner, 'or to kill him, or does any manner of vio-'lence to his perſon, he, together with all 'theſe who have contributed thereto, ei-'ther by aſſiſtance or advice, any manner 'of way, are to be hanged, then quarter-'ed, after the treaſon is made manifeſt.

'In the like manner are they to be pu-'niſhed who have had any ſuch deſign, 'tho' they have not been able to put it in 'execution; as alſo thoſe who have had a-'ny knowledge thereof, and have not diſ-'covered the ſame.'

Theſe extracts from the divine and civil law being read and conſidered, it was unanimouſly reſolved by the miniſters to collect the opinion of every one of the judges ſeparately; after which they gave their own, and the whole aſſembly unanimouſly agreed in their ſentence, 'that the Czarowich for 'the crimes alledged and made out againſt 'him, deſerved death.'

On the 21ſt of *June*, his majeſty ordered Mr. *Tolſtoy* privy-counſellor, to lay before his miniſtry and ſenators aſſembled, the judgment of the clergy as follows. 'Ha-'ving reflected on the great crimes commit-

'ted

'ted by a ſon, who, after the example of *Abſalom* has rebelled againſt his father, and on the perſon offended, who as a father, and a ſovereign, has abſolute power over his ſon, we dare not meddle in this affair, further than to give advice, it belonging to the civil juriſdiction, and not to the eccleſiaſtick. Beſides, that the abſolute power eſtabliſhed in the *Ruſſian* empire, being a monarchy, is conſequently not ſubjected to the judgment of ſubjects, but that of the ſovereign, who has power to act ſolely by his own good-will and pleaſure, without the intervention of any inferiors.

BOOK XII.

The judgment of the clergy.

'Nevertheleſs, ſeeing we are commanded by our moſt gracious ſovereign for his inſtruction, to ſearch and find out ſtatutes, applicable to the affair in queſtion; therefore in obedience to his orders, we the under-written eccleſiaſticks, aſſembled in the imperial capital city of St. *Petersburgh*, have gathered from the holy ſcriptures, what we thought moſt applicable to the preſent dreadful and unhappy affair.'

'The ſon of *Noah* was curſed, and condemned to ſerve his brothers, for having only mocked his father, *Gen.* ix.

'GOD ſays in the commandments, "Honour your father and your mother, that "your

BOOK XII.

" your days may be long in the land." ' *Exodus* xx.

" You ſhall not curſe the prince of your " people." *Exod.* xxii. " He that curſes " his father, or his mother, ſhall be puniſh- " ed with death." *Exod.* xxi. *Levit.* xx.

' JESUS CHRIST ſays the ſame, *Matth.* ' xv. *Mark* vii. " If a man has a rebellious " and inſolent ſon, who will not ſubmit to " the commands of his father nor his mo- " ther, he ſhall be ſtoned to death." *Deut.* ' xxi. " The eye that inſults his father, " and deſpiſes his mother, *&c.* Prov. xxx.

" Honour your father, both in words " and actions." *Eccleſ.* iii. The hiſtory of ' *Abſalom* in 2 *Kings* xv.

' JESUS CHRIST was ſubjected to his ' father *Joſeph*, and to his mother, *Luke* ' xxii. He likeways ordered tribute to be ' paid unto *Cæſar*.'

With a great deal more to this purpoſe, out of the ſcriptures, and ſomewhat from *Chryſoſtome*; after which they conclude, in humbly ſubmitting all to the Czar's conſideration, ſaying, ' If his majeſty incline to ' puniſh the criminal according to his acti- ' ons, he has before his eyes examples from ' the Old and New Teſtaments: if he will ' ſhew mercy, he has the example of JESUS ' CHRIST, who received the diſobedient ' on their repentance, and pardoned the wo-

' man

'man taken in adultery, who by the law
'ſhould have been ſtoned to death; alſo
'the example of *David*, who would have
'ſaved his ſon *Abſalom*.

'After all, the heart of the Czar (add
'they), is in the hands of GOD, let him
'chooſe the part to which GOD ſhall di-
'rect him.'

This judgment or opinion, was ſigned by all the eccleſiaſtics preſent, the metropolitan of *Reſan* at their head. Upon which, ſentence of death was pronounced againſt the Czarowich at St. *Petersburgh*, the 24th of *June* 1718, and ſigned by one hundred and twenty-four, miniſters, ſenators, general officers, and others: Prince *Menzekoff* ſtands firſt in the liſt.

The final ſentence.

His majeſty being informed of the ſentence paſſed againſt his ſon, would not immediately declare whether he would ſhew clemency, or ſeverity; but ordered the ſentence to be made known to the criminal, who being naturally of weak ſpirits, and ſurprized with the horror of ſuch a deſtiny, fell into ſuch convulſions, that with difficulty he recovered ſo far as to be able to beg his pardon of his father, before moſt of the miniſtry and ſenators; which he granted: but all the phyſicians could do, was not able to reſtore him to his health, ſo that on the 6th of *July* he expired. His corpſe was expoſed from

The Czarowich's death.

BOOK XII.

from the 8th to the 10th, in the church of the *Trinity*; after which he was interred, near the Princeſs his ſpouſe, with all the ceremonies uſual on ſuch occaſions, the Czar and all the court witneſſing the interrment.

This event being one of the moſt extraordinary that has happened in many ages, ſome took the liberty to condemn, and others to juſtify the Czar's conduct. Some think his ſon was poiſoned, others that he was blooded to death; but many believed that the horror of the ſentence threw him into ſuch convulſions, that there was no poſſibility of his recovery.

His Czariſh majeſty was at pains to vindicate his conduct to the world, as may be ſeen by his memorial to foreign courts.

The accomplices put to death.

Many of the Czarowich's accomplices and counſellors were on this occaſion put to death, particularly the * metropolitan of *Reſan*, his confeſſor *James*, Prince *Gagarin*, *Kekin*,

* The Czar was exceedingly prejudiced againſt this metropolitan, for having ſo vehemently oppoſed his forcing the Empreſs *Eudoxia* into the convent, and telling him in plain terms, that he could not be ſilent in a matter that regarded religion ſo near: for beſides the illegality of the thing, it was giving very bad example to his ſubjects, and that all who did ſo, were *ipſo facto* excomunicate. The Czar for many years had regard to this remonſtrance, but at laſt broke through all rules, and married the Empreſs *Katharine* publickly, *Anno* 1710; which the zealous metropolitan ſtill oppoſed, and in his public exhortations exclaimed againſt, as irregular, uncanonical and unchriſtian; ſo that when it was

Kekin, with many more of the clergy and laity, and even ladies of the firſt quality, ſome beheaded, others broke upon the wheel; many more puniſhed with the knout and battogues; beſides thoſe who were exiled into *Siberia*; all of whom had their eſtates and effects confiſcated. The diſgraced Empreſs, mother of the unhappy Czarowich, was ſent to paſs the reſt of her days in a convent on the lake *Ladoga*, and Princeſs *Maria Alexowna*, to the ſtrong caſtle of *Slutelburg*.

made appear he kept a correſpondence with the Czarowich *Alexis*, though not criminal, he was condemned to loſe his head. The good metropolitan acted in this like another *Ambroſe*.

End of the Twelfth Book.

THE

HISTORY

OF

PETER the *GREAT*,

EMPEROR of *RUSSIA*.

BOOK XIII.

THE Czar, tho' much taken up with the proceſs againſt the Czarowich *Alexis*, and his accomplices, was not unmindful of his other affairs: having conferred with Baron *Gortz*, the King of *Sweden*'s prime miniſter, a perſon of great capacity and reſolution, they came pretty near an agreement. The Czar, who heartily deſired peace, did not altogether reject *Gortz*'s propoſals: but the queſtion was, how this peace could be concluded without including his allies? The King of *Sweden* was for a ſeparate one with the Czar, becauſe ſince he was to yield the moſt part of the conqueſts, (reſerving to himſelf only *Finland*) he pro-

1718.

BOOK XIII.

poſed by an alliance with his Czariſh majeſty, not only to recover his other countries poſſeſſed by *Denmark*, *Pruſſia* and *Hanover*, but alſo to make up his loſſes off one or other of them. This was Baron *Gortz*'s ſcheme, who had nothing in his view but the intereſt of his maſter: ſo plenipotentiaries were firſt appointed to meet at *Abo*; to which place the Czar ſent (with full powers) General *James Bruce* and Baron *Oſterman*: but the *Swediſh* plenipotentiaries not appearing, the Czar concluded that the King of *Sweden* was purſuing other deſigns, and therefore reſolved on a deſcent upon *Sweden*, with an army of forty thouſand men. In order thereto, he recalled his troops from *Mechlenburgh*, leaving only in that country about four thouſand foot and dragoons.

The Czar's preparations in order to a peace with *Sweden*.

In the mean time, Baron *Gortz* arrived at *Revel* with his Czariſh majeſty's paſſport, together with Count *Gyllenberg*; and on the 17th of *May*, they repaired to the iſle of *Allandt*, to which place the conferences were transferred, and where houſes were built for their accommodation. The Czar at the ſame time advanced with his fleet towards the iſland of *Hango*, without undertaking any thing that could diſturb the negociations: from *Hango* he repaired with his fleet to *Abo*, that he might be at hand

to

to procure the ſpeedy concluſion of the treaty; from which he had ſo great aſſurance of peace, that he agreed to the exchange of Marſhal *Renſhild*, with Prince *James Dolgoruky*, who had been detained priſoner ſince the firſt affair before *Narva*. BOOK XIII.

Baron *Gortz* went to and again to acquaint his maſter with what was doing, and to perſuade him to approve of the plan agreed upon at *Allandt*; by which the Czar was to remain peaceable poſſeſſor of *Livonia*, *Eaſtonia*, *Ingria* and a part of *Carrelia*, with the whole great dutchy of *Finland*, and all to the north of it. *Gortz* aſſured the Czar that he would prevail with his maſter the King of *Sweden* to agree to theſe conceſſions, provided his Czariſh majeſty would aſſiſt him with his land and naval force to re-eſtabliſh King *Staniſlaus* on the throne of *Poland*; as alſo to aſſiſt him to recover the dominions the *Danes* and *Hanoverians* were in poſſeſſion of, belonging to that crown. The King of *Pruſſia* was likeways to be comprehended in this treaty, the Czar having undertaken to get *Stetin*, with its diſtrict, reſtored to the King of *Sweden*, for an equivalent to the King of *Pruſſia* elſewhere. The plan agreed on betwixt *Oſterman* and *Gortz* was as follows:

I. The

BOOK XIII.

P'n of *Osterman* and *Gortz*.

I. The Czar faithfully promiſes and engages to cauſe put in execution the treaty of *Altranſtadt*, ſo that the republick of *Poland* ſhall in time coming make no difficulty to receive and acknowledge for their rightful ſovereign King *Staniſlaus*; and to the end he may be received in that quality, the Czar ſhall order into *Poland*, the enſuing ſpring, an army of ſixty thouſand foot and dragoons; that the King of *Sweden*, in order to ſupport this deſign, ſhall paſs into *Germany* with a numerous army, to act in concert with the Czar; and in caſe any powers whatſoever ſhall intereſt themſelves in the affairs of *Poland*, in oppoſition to this deſign, their Czariſh and *Swediſh* majeſties oblige themſelves not to lay down arms till King *Staniſlaus* be effectually ſettled on the throne, and to mantain him thereon; as alſo to ſecure to the republic of *Poland* the freedom of electing their kings.

II. His Czariſh majeſty ſhall become mediator betwixt the kings of *Sweden* and *Pruſſia*, in order to eſtabliſh a good underſtanding, by prevailing with his *Pruſſian* majeſty to remove the difference concerning *Stetin*, &c. and the demolition of *Wiſmar*; and in caſe the King of *Pruſſia* ſhall inſiſt upon an equivalent for the above-mentioned places, the two contracting powers ſhall act in

in concert for procuring him ſatisfaction elſe- BOOK
where, without loſs to *Sweden;* then in XIII.
exchange, his *Pruſſian* majeſty ſhall not on-
ly be obliged to reſtore *Stetin* and all *Swe-*
diſh Pomerania to the King of *Sweden*, but
to guarantee the treaty concluded betwixt
him and the Czar; as alſo, to conclude with
them a defenſive alliance as projected on
that ſubject; which alliance with *Pruſſia* is
to be entered into two months after the
ratification of the treaty betwixt *Ruſſia* and
Sweden.

III. The Czar finding it moſt juſt that the King of *Sweden* ſhould have ſatisfaction by a convenient equivalent, for the large conceſſion he has granted to him, promiſes that if the ſaid King ſhall find the equivalent commodious for him on the *Norway* quarter, he ſhall actually contribute thereto; and when the King of *Sweden* paſſes over into *Germany* with an army of forty thouſand men, the Czar ſhall order twenty-five thouſand of his army in *Poland* to join him, on his own proper charges, to act under his *Swediſh* majeſty's orders, the better to execute the projected plan; and if any other powers ſhall offer to oppoſe or intermeddle, the Czar engages to aſſiſt with his whole force: provided nevertheleſs the equivalent his *Swediſh* majeſty is to take from *Denmark*, be not on this ſide of the *Baltick* ſea.

BOOK XIII.

ſea. The operations by ſea, ſhall be carried on in concert betwixt the contracting powers, the Czar promiſing to join his whole maritime force with that of *Sweden*.

IV. The Czar engages to aſſiſt with all his force, not only to oblige the *Hanoverians* to reſtore *Bremen* and *Verden* to the King of *Sweden*, but likeways to give him reparation of his damages: and if it happen that *Great Britain* ſhall intereſt itſelf, the two contracting parties promiſe jointly not to lay down their arms, until they have obtained the above-mentioned reſtitution and ſatisfaction on *Hanover*; but in caſe the King of *Sweden*, before the reſtitution, ſhall liberate the Czar from this laſt engagement, he promiſes and takes upon him, to diſpoſe the Duke of *Mechlenburgh* to yield to the crown of *Sweden*, voluntarily in all time coming, the dutchy of *Mechlenburgh* and its dependancies, in exchange of any equivalent which the Czar engages to procure for the ſaid Duke; but as the equivalent can be no where ſo conveniently procured as on the ſide of *Poland*, the King of *Sweden* is to oblige himſelf to concur in the execution thereof; in this caſe the hereditary ſettlements betwixt the houſes of *Pruſſia* and *Mechlenburgh* ſhall have the ſame force with regard to the equivalent given to the ſaid Duke

Duke. Moreover the contracting parties shall invite the other powers to enter into their treaty of alliance in order to entertain a mutual friendship and confidence. BOOK XIII.

Matters being settled after this manner, immediately on the conclusion of peace, the Czar, with the kings of *Sweden* and *Prussia*, were to order as many ships as should be necessary to transport the King of *Sweden* with his army, and that these ships should be in the *Swedish* ports before winter, to be ready for the said design against the sea was open: about which time the Czar should be ready with his ships of force and gallies to join the *Swedish* fleet, in order to block up the *Danish* ships, that they might neither obstruct the transports, nor send troops over to *Jutland* or *Holstein*, and that the Czar should have his twenty-five thousand men in *Mechlenburgh* ready to join the King of *Sweden* on his landing.

The court of *Britain* having conceived some jealousy on account of the Chevalier de St. *George*'s adherents at *Mittau*, sent persons to the courts of *Russia* and *Sweden*, with a view to penetrate into their most secret intrigues. Amongst others Mr. *Jeffries* arrived at St. *Petersburgh*, not so much to make any proposals, as to discover the designs of the court. The *British* court jealous.

BOOK XIII.

The Czar who had continued all this time about *Hango* and *Abo*, returned with the fleet to St. *Petersburgh* the 14th of *September*, where to his great joy he found that the Empreſs *Katharine* on the 31ſt of *Auguſt*, had been delievered of a Princeſs, who was named *Natallia* after the Czar's ſiſter; then he cauſed unrigg the fleet, which left no manner of doubt of peace being concluded betwixt *Ruſſia* and *Sweden*: *Baron Gortz* being returned from his maſter to *Alandt*, to give the finiſhing ſtroke to the negotiations, repaired ſoon to *Sweden* to give the King an account of affairs.

The *Ruſſian* troops had all this while continued in the heart of *Poland*, tho' they had often promiſed to leave the country, and had made ſeveral motions tending that way; yet they ſtill remained exacting contributions. The dyet being aſſembled, deſired Prince *Dolgoruky* to write and obtain an order from the Czar to Prince *Repnin* who commanded theſe troops, to remove, or they would be obliged to raiſe the poſpolite *Ruſziny* and force them out of the country.

The affairs in *Mechlenburgh* were in ſuch diſorder, occaſioned by ſome miſunderſtanding betwixt the Duke and the nobility, that the Emperor of *Germany* ſent a commiſſion to examine into theſe complaints;

plaints; but the Duke not being of an humour to ſubmit, deſired aſſiſtance from the Czar who was uncle to the Dutcheſs, whereupon he ordered troops into that country to ſupport him. BOOK XIII.

During theſe tranſactions the King of *Sweden* undertook the fatal ſiege of *Frederickſhall* in *Norway*, a place of great ſtrength, and reckoned the key of that kingdom. The ſiege was ſo ſucceſsfully advanced, that they had already made themſelves maſters of the fort called *Guldenlew:* but the King being impatient, tho' he was told by the engeneer who had the direction of the ſiege, that the town muſt ſurrender in a few days, yet he muſt needs go to the extremity of the approaches to obſerve what the enemy was doing; where leaning over the parapet, he received a ſhot in the head by a ball about half a pound weight, whereof he died that inſtant.

The King of *Sweden*'s death, *December* 11*th* 1718.

Thus died *Charles* XII. of *Sweden*, a heroe all over, who ſaving the will of GOD, deſerved a longer life, and in all appearance would have retrieved his affairs.

This Kings death cauſed a great change in the affairs of the north: *Baron Gortz* who had not got the accounts of it, was arreſted as he was going to his maſter at the ſiege of *Frederickſhall.* He was condemned, and his head ſtruck off on a ſcaffold,

BOOK XIII.

for no other reaſon that ever I could learn, but for having ſerved his maſter faithfully: 'tis true he put him upon ways and means to tax his ſubjects, which were puſhed ſo far, that they ſeized the jewels and plate of private families, *&c.* but there was a neceſſity for it, or all muſt have gone to pot. This however ſo enraged the principal perſons of the Kingdom, that nothing would ſatisfy them but the life of that able miniſter. A little before his execution, he made his own epitaph, in theſe words: MORS REGIS, FIDES IN REGEM, MORS MEA.

They alſo cauſed arreſt ſeveral perſons who had been concerned with the Baron, particularly his Secretary in the iſle of *Allandt;* by which the Czar came to know of the King of *Sweden*'s death, and that his ſiſter the Princeſs *Ulrica* was proclaimed Queen: this put a ſtop to all negotiations for the time, and overturned all their * projects. But the Czar conſidering the unhappy ſtate of *Sweden*, a kingdom impoveriſhed, without an army, and having ſcarcely bread, did not doubt but they would renew their negotiations, and continue them on the footing concerted betwixt *Oſterman* and *Gortz*.

Counſellor

* One of thoſe projects was ſaid to be in favour of the Chevalier de St. *George*, wherein the King of *Spain* was to have a ſhare, and who undertook it alone unſucceſsfully the next year.

Counſellor *Oſterman* being at St. *Peters-burgh* in the beginning of *February*, the Czar gave him new inſtructions; being informed that the Queen of *Sweden* deſigned to continue the conferences, and had named Baron *Lillienſted* to ſucceed Baron *Gortz* at the congreſs; who arriving at *Allandt* in in the beginning of *June*, *Oſterman* by the Czar's orders repaired thither, with a view to continue the negotiations, on the former plan, if the *Swedes* inclined; but if otherways, to acquaint the *Swediſh* plenipotentiaries from him, 'that if they did not with-'in the ſpace of two months, accept of theſe 'conditions, he would enter their country 'with fire and ſword, and force them to 'take worſe.'

BOOK XIII. 1719.

The King of *Sweden*'s death made ſuch a change in affairs all over *Europe*, that thoſe to whom he had given ſo great umbrage, began now to pity the deplorable ſtate of *Sweden*, and agreed not to allow that kingdom to be quite over-run and ſubdued by the *Ruſſians*. The famous quadruple alliance was concluded in the month of *Auguſt*, where it was ſtipulate, that an enemy to one ſhould be ſo to all. And *France* having reconciled *Great Britain* and *Hanover* with *Sweden*, Colonel *Baſſwick* was ſent to *Stockholm* as miniſter from *Hanover*, and Lord *Carteret* from *Great Britain*; where

The quadruple alliance.

BOOK XIII.

where they entered into an alliance with *Sweden* againſt the Czar; by which *Bremen* and *Verden* were for a million of crowns given off to *Hanover*; and *Great Britain*, beſides paying yearly three hundred thouſand crowns of ſubſidy to *Sweden*, was obliged during the war, to aſſiſt that crown with its naval force againſt *Ruſſia*, to oblige the Czar to give up the provinces he had taken from *Sweden*; as alſo to get *Holſtein* reſtored to the Duke. Much about this time, the King of *Pruſſia* entered into an alliance with *Sweden*, after the ſame manner, for which he got *Stetin*, &c. yielded to him; ſo that the Czar not only ſaw himſelf abandoned by his allies, but that they alſo joined his enemies againſt him; which obliged him of neceſſity to put his project of a deſcent in execution. Mean time, to make the *Swedes* accept of his propoſals, and to ſatisfy the world of the motives of this expedition, he publiſhed a declaration containing his reaſons.

Bremen and Verden.

The Czar's allies join againſt him.

The Queen of *Sweden* was no ſooner informed thereof, than ſhe cauſed publiſh a counter manifeſto, containing her reaſons for the war; amongſt others, ſhe accuſed the Czar of breach of faith, and that he abſolutely refuſed to reſtore the *Swediſh* provinces he had with his furious armies made himſelf maſter of; adding, that it would be more

more for the honour and good of the country, to follow the ſteps of their glorious anceſtors, than to ſubmit to a yoke which would prove more inſupportable than death.

The Czar carried on this expedition with vigour, having ordered his High-admiral *Apraxin*, with a great fleet of ſhips and gallies, together with a ſtrong body of troops, to the coaſt of *Swedén*; where directing their courſe towards the iſlands of *Dallers*, they landed ſome troops, and took many priſoners; burning and deſtroying every where: then leaving *Stockholm* on the left, they purſued their march towards *Sudertelge*; where they not only deſtroyed all the copper-mines, burnt the furnaces and houſes, but alſo ſet the woods on fire. He left Commodore *Sinavin* cruizing about the *Dallers* with nine ſhips of force, who alſo landed troops; and after having plundered and deſtroyed the country all round, carried off their cattle. Admiral *Apraxin* arriving on the 19th at *Landſort*, with his ſhips and gallies, took ſeveral *Dutch* ſhips loaded from *Koningsberg* with grain for *Stockholm*; and a party of *Coſſacks*, after having advanced within three leagues of that town, attacked and routed the *Swediſh* advanced troops, took priſoners a corporal and eight of the Queen's guards. This put ſuch a conſternation amongſt all ranks of people in the capital,

His expedition againſt *Sweden*.

Conſternation and ruin in that kingdom.

BOOK XIII. capital, that the hereditary Prince of *Heſſe Caſſel* and General *Ducker*, were obliged with ſome troops to march down the length of *Waxholm*, where they came to underſtand that the enemy had on board thirty thouſand land forces ready to invade the kingdom: upon which, the Prince marched with the *Swediſh* army, conſiſting of about fourteen thouſand men to *Tuna*, diſtant from *Stockholm* ſome more than four leagues. The *Swedes* took all poſſible precautions to withſtand the *Ruſſians*; but being obliged to divide their troops, and ſend them in parties here and there, they had not numbers for attacking the enemy; ſo that in their ſight all the country round was deſtroyed: amongſt other places, *Griſenhaven*, *Oſter*, *Kamingen* and *Doirſo*, a fine ſeat belonging to the Secretary of ſtate. Another party burnt *Bo*, together with Baron *Teſſin*'s fine houſe, built after the *Italian* manner, within three leagues of *Stocholm*; which obliged the Prince to march againſt them from *Tuna*: whereupon the *Ruſſians* retired loaded with booty, driving all the cattle before them. After this, his Royal highneſs returned to the capital to encourage the inhabitants, who were terrified to the laſt degree to ſee the enemy ſo near the town: the Prince went towards night to *Carelsberg*, (about a league diſtant from *Stockholm*)

holm) where the court then was, to acquaint the Queen his ſpouſe with the ſtate of affairs. BOOK XIII.

By this time they had accounts that Admiral *Norris* was arrived in the *Sound*, and lay with his ſquadron a little diſtance from *Copenhagen*, which gave the *Swedes* hopes of ſome extraordinary aſſiſtance by that means. Sir *John Norris*'s expedition.

Nevertheleſs the *Ruſſians* continued their hoſtilities, and on the 28th took ſeveral ſhips loaded with proviſions for *Stockholm*; the reſt ſaved themſelves under the cannon of the fort *Daliro*. On the 29th, they burnt the following places, *viz. Vagelbro*, *Malmoe*, *Sab*, *Sand*, *Wasby*, *Bratland*, &c. with churches, houſes, and what they could ſet fire to, carrying off with them all that was portable. On the 30th, his Royal highneſs retreated with the army to *Jourſholm*, within a league and an half of the capital.

Towards the north, the *Ruſſians* had burnt many towns and villages: they deſtroyed the whole iſland of *Sodiroun*, all the country about *Boertiles*; the towns of *Oſtkamer*, *Oregrund*, and the country of *Hokoywood*, where the beſt iron-mines in all *Sweden* were totally ruined, to the unſpeakable loſs of the kingdom; neither did they ſpare *Thoras*, an agreeable place, belonging

BOOK XIII. capital, that the hereditary Prince of *Heſſe Caſſel* and General *Ducker*, were obliged with ſome troops to march down the length of *Waxholm*, where they came to underſtand that the enemy had on board thirty thouſand land forces ready to invade the kingdom: upon which, the Prince marched with the *Swediſh* army, conſiſting of about fourteen thouſand men to *Tuna*, diſtant from *Stockholm* ſome more than four leagues. The *Swedes* took all poſſible precautions to withſtand the *Ruſſians*; but being obliged to divide their troops, and ſend them in parties here and there, they had not numbers for attacking the enemy; ſo that in their ſight all the country round was deſtroyed: amongſt other places, *Griſenhaven*, *Oſter*, *Kamingen* and *Doirſo*, a fine ſeat belonging to the Secretary of ſtate. Another party burnt *Bo*, together with Baron *Teſſin*'s fine houſe, built after the *Italian* manner, within three leagues of *Stocholm*; which obliged the Prince to march againſt them from *Tuna*: whereupon the *Ruſſians* retired loaded with booty, driving all the cattle before them. After this, his Royal highneſs returned to the capital to encourage the inhabitants, who were terrified to the laſt degree to ſee the enemy ſo near the town: the Prince went towards night to *Carelsberg*, (about a league diſtant from *Stockholm*)

holm) where the court then was, to acquaint the Queen his ſpouſe with the ſtate of affairs. BOOK XIII.

By this time they had accounts that Admiral *Norris* was arrived in the *Sound*, and lay with his ſquadron a little diſtance from *Copenhagen*, which gave the *Swedes* hopes of ſome extraordinary aſſiſtance by that means. Sir *John Norris*'s expedition.

Nevertheleſs the *Ruſſians* continued their hoſtilities, and on the 28th took ſeveral ſhips loaded with proviſions for *Stockholm*; the reſt ſaved themſelves under the cannon of the fort *Daliro*. On the 29th, they burnt the following places, *viz. Vagelbro*, *Malmoe*, *Sab*, *Sand*, *Wasby*, *Bratland*, &c. with churches, houſes, and what they could ſet fire to, carrying off with them all that was portable. On the 30th, his Royal highneſs retreated with the army to *Jourſholm*, within a league and an half of the capital.

Towards the north, the *Ruſſians* had burnt many towns and villages: they deſtroyed the whole iſland of *Sodiroun*, all the country about *Boertiles*; the towns of *Oſtkamer*, *Oregrund*, and the country of *Hokoywood*, where the beſt iron-mines in all *Sweden* were totally ruined, to the unſpeakable loſs of the kingdom; neither did they ſpare *Thoras*, an agreeable place, belonging

BOOK XIII.

to Mr. *Rumph* the *Dutch* reſident. It was not in the power of *Sweden* to put a ſtop to theſe calamities, tho' Marſhal *Ducker* gave orders that all the *Ruſſians* who were taken on ſuch occaſions, ſhould be immediately thrown into the flames. In the beginning of *Auguſt*, about two thouſand *Ruſſians* having debarked at *Oſterweek*, after having routed a party of the enemy, they burnt the town of *Suderlege*, with moſt of the farms and villages in the neighbourhood. But near to *Toſſa*, a party of *Ruſſians* having debarked, fell in with a body of *Swedes*, who cut them to pieces, and took ſeveral priſoners. Towards the north, the *Ruſſians* burnt and deſtroyed many mines, eſpecially near to *Nicoping*, a town of good trade, which they alſo burnt; but the inhabitants of *Norcoping* fell upon a ſtratagem to ſave themſelves, which was by removing the beſt of their effects, and then ſetting the town on fire; which the *Ruſſians* beholding in flames, believed it to be done by their own people, ſo went not near it.

A party of *Ruſſians* defeated.

The places deſtroyed on this unhappy expedition by Admiral *Apraxin*, were ſix good towns, eleven palaces built of ſtone, and an hundred and nine gentlemens ſeats of timber, eight hundred and twenty-ſix farms, three mills, and ten magazines, two copper furnaces, and five of iron. Places

deſtroyed

deſtroyed by Major-general *Lacy*; two good towns, twenty-one gentlemens ſeats, five hundred and thirty-five farms, forty mills, ſixteen magazines, and nine iron furnaces; one whereof was ſo valuable, that the proprietors offered three hundred thouſand rix-dollars to ſave it, but in vain. The *Ruſſians* carried off both copper, iron, and every thing elſe; and what they could not take on board their ſhips they threw into the ſea.

The Czar concluded that after all this havock and deſtruction, the *Swedes* would come into his terms; and ſent (after the congreſs of *Allandt* was quite broke up) Counſellor *Oſterman* with freſh propoſals; which upon the matter were the ſame as before, and were rejected by the *Swedes*.

The Czar's propoſals rejected again by the *Swedes*.

Admiral *Norris*, with the *Britiſh* ſquadron, after having continued ſome time in the bay of *Copenhagen*, ſailed to the *Swediſh* ports. As ſoon as the Czar had accounts thereof, he wrote to the ſaid Admiral to know the reaſons of his entering into the *Baltick*, if he had orders to interrupt or oppoſe his operations and deſigns? The Admiral anſwered, that he had no ſuch orders, but was come into theſe ſeas for the more ſecurity of trade. Nevertheleſs, he joined the *Swediſh* fleet, commanded by Admiral *Sparr*, and ſailed with it towards

BOOK XIII.

Stockholm. But before they came up, the Czar having ended all he had projected this campaign, had already retired within his ports. 'Tis true, he retired ſomewhat ſooner than he would have done, on account of a letter he had received from the Queen of *Sweden*, intreating that he would deſiſt from further hoſtilities, in order to procure time to conclude without diſturbance a ſolid peace. His Czariſh majeſty did not retire as was given out, from any concern he had about the *Engliſh* ſquadron, being ignorant of any treaty entered into betwixt the courts of *Great Britain* and *Sweden* to his prejudice: for it had not been intimated to him by the *Britiſh* miniſter at St. *Petersburgh*. This made him give no credit to any report that the *Britiſh* court had concluded a particular peace with *Sweden*; nor was he entirely convinced thereof till Mr. *Berkley*, an *Engliſh* gentleman, came to the iſle of *Allandt* from Lord *Carteret*, Ambaſſador at the court of *Sweden*, with a letter to General *Bruce*, one of the Czar's plenipotentiaries at that place, with letters alſo to the Czar from the foreſaid Ambaſſador, and Sir *John Norris*: General *Bruce* did not think fit to forward theſe letters, but returned them to the Ambaſſador with the following anſwer.

Mr.

BOOK XIII.

General *Bruce's* letter to Lord *Carteret.*

'Mr. *Berkley* has delivered me the letter 'your excellency did me the honour to 'write me the 1ſt of *September* old ſtyle; 'who alſo communicated to me at my de- 'ſire, the contents of thoſe he was char- 'ged with to his Czariſh majeſty. Your 'excellency will permit me to tell you, that 'I find the contents thereof ſo ſingular, 'and ſo little agreeable to the ſtrict ties and 'alliances ſubſiſting betwixt the courts of '*Ruſſia* and *Great Britain*, that I cannot 'take upon me to agree to what you deſire, 'without firſt having orders from the Czar 'my maſter. Moreover, I am perſuaded 'that the court of *Great Britain* does not 'want the ordinary means to communicate 'its ſentiments, either by letters to his ma- 'jeſty the Czar, or by their miniſter at 'St. *Petersburgh*; ſo that there is no ne- 'ceſſity for making uſe of ſuch extraordi- 'nary and unuſual expedients.'

This anſwer could not fail to ſatisfy the Ambaſſador and Admiral *Norris*, that his Czariſh majeſty was not to be forced in to meaſures. Some time after, Meſſrs. *Jeffries* and *Weber* received orders from their court to depart from St. *Petersburgh*, and retire to *Dantzick*: this convinced the Czar of the diſpoſitions of that court; beſides, he was now fully aſſured that Admiral *Norris* had orders to oppoſe, in conjunction with *Sweden*,

BOOK XIII.

Sweden, the operations of the *Ruſſian* fleet. Whereupon, the Czar finding that the King of *Britain*, his ally, was now become his enemy, cauſed arreſt all the *Britiſh* merchants within his dominions, and threatned to confiſcate their effects, which amounted to ſeveral millions, if the *Britiſh* made war againſt him; and declared his intentions to that effect, by a memorial he cauſed his reſident, Mr. *Weſſelosky*, preſent to the court at *London*.

The Czar cauſes arreſt the *Britiſh* merchants.

A memorial publiſhed at *London*.

The Czar puts them in mind of the alliance concluded betwixt that court, *Hanover* and *Ruſſia*, in the year 1715; wherein, as elector of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburgh*, King *George* obliges himſelf not to make peace with *Sweden*, without comprehending *Ruſſia*, far leſs in excluſion thereof; but that they ſhould employ all poſſible means to procure by a general peace the ceſſion of *Ingria*, *Carelia* and *Eaſthonia*, together with the town of *Revel* and its dependancies; and likeways, not to oppoſe directly nor indirectly, any other conditions his majeſty the Czar thought fit to ſtipulate on the concluſion of a general peace with *Sweden*. On the part of *Ruſſia*, that the Czar obliged himſelf to procure the ceſſion of the dutchies of *Bremen* and *Verden* to the electorate of *Hanover*, which was made effectual, and could not have been obtained

but

but by the means and ſtrong ſolicitations the court of *Ruſſia* made uſe of with the King of *Denmark*. That it cannot be denied that thoſe ſolicitations and means, had inclined the King of *Denmark* to part with theſe valuable poſſeſſions, to the aggrandizing of the houſe of *Hanover*. That there was nothing more natural than to expect the returns of ſuch good offices, by a religious obſervance of the ſame treaty: but that inſtead thereof, a ſeparate peace was concluded, not only in excluſion of the Czar, but alſo to diſengage from his alliance the kings of *Pruſſia* and *Poland*, (as elector of *Saxony*) who are comprehended in the ſeparate treaty; by which they not only are obliged to furniſh the *Swedes* a large ſubſidy in money, but alſo to aſſiſt them with their effects. *Weſſelosky* ſubjoined, that the former kings of *Great Britain* had nothing more at heart than the religious obſervance of treaties concluded betwixt the crowns of *Ruſſia* and *Great Britain*, in conſideration of the advantages both nations reaped from the trade their ſubjects enjoyed; with a great deal more to this purpoſe, too long to be inſerted here.

King *George* as elector of *Hanover* replied, that ſeeing the Czar's memorial began with reproaching the ſteps the court of *Great Britain* had taken laſt year in favour of *Sweden*,

King *George*'s anſwer as elector of *Hanover*.

BOOK XIII.

den, as being entirely oppoſite to the engagements entered into by the ſaid court, and that of *Ruſſia Anno* 1715. it was going a little too faſt to overlook four full years, and not examine into the ſteps of the court of *Ruſſia* during that time: that the world was left to judge, which of the courts had firſt infringed the treaty of 1715; of the project of taking poſſeſſion of *Wiſmar*, and the deſign formed to make an eſtabliſhment in *Germany* under pretence of a deſcent on *Schonen*, which never was intended; of the exactions of the *Ruſſian* troops in *Mechlenburgh*, and their refuſal to evacuate that dutchy; the deſigns to intimidate the *Swedes*, to force them into a ſeparate peace; the interview with Baron *Gortz*; the congreſs of *Allandt*, formed without the conſent of the allies, their miniſters not admitted thereat; and of the plan formed betwixt *Oſterman* and *Gortz*. The world was alſo left to judge, if all theſe ſteps were conſonant to the alliance and treaty entered into *Anno* 1715. As to the fleets ſent to the *Baltick*, they were to protect the trade of the nation, without giving the leaſt occaſion of complaint or umbrage to the Czar. But if the court of *Ruſſia*'s conduct during theſe four years be examined, it will be found that as little regard has been had to *Great Britain* as to *Hanover*; intrigues

intrigues being carried on in favours of the Chevalier de St. *George*, his emiſſaries admitted at St. *Petersburgh*; their memorials received, their projects ſupported and encouraged, the moſt eminent perſons among them protected at *Mittau*; the expedition againſt *Norway* concerted with the King of *Sweden*, after which a deſcent deſigned into *Scotland*; an offenſive alliance betwixt *Ruſſia* and *Spain*; an entire harmony betwixt the miniſters of the ſaid courts at the *Hague*; the regent of *France* diſſuaded to ſign the quadruple alliance: in fine, a kingdom laid waſte, and on the point of being ſubdued, if *Great Britain* did not interpoſe. This is a ſhort ennumeration of the benefits *Great Britain* and *Hanover* have received from *Ruſſia*, &c. &c.

His anſwer as King of *Britain*.

The court of *Britain*'s anſwer to the Czar's memorial was much about what has been already ſaid, and may be found in ſeveral authors; particularly in the memoirs of *Peter* the Great, ſaid to be wrote by Baron *Ivan Weſteſoranoi* a *Ruſſian*, (tho' I never knew a Baron of that nation) ſo there is no uſe of repeating it here; but to proceed to real facts and operations both without and within the empire of *Ruſſia*, in the year 1719. thoſe memorials and anſwers ſerving rather to continue and augment the differences than to cure them.

BOOK XIII.

The Czar having as already ſaid, ſettled and eſtabliſhed his councils after the manner of *France;* amongſt others he appointed one for the mines, compoſed of perſons of experience and knowledge at St. *Petersburgh*, where he cauſed build founderies, and furnaces for melting and ſeperating, with every thing elſe that concerns metals.

His majeſty alſo conſidering that his ſubjects were come in uſe of travelling into foreign countries, on pretence of health, to uſe the waters of *Carlesbath*, *Swalfsbath*, *Pyrmont* &c. which could not be done without conſiderable expence, and reflecting too that moſt of the late Czarowich *Alexis*'s deſigns had been concerted on ſuch occaſions, he magnified the waters of *Alonitz* in his own country, the virtues whereof he had himſelf experienced, and, by the opinion of the phyſicians, they were found to be nothing inferior, but rather to exceed thoſe in foreign countries.

At this place are the beſt iron works in all *Ruſſia*, and the iron exceeding good, where the Czar has ſome of the beſt gunſmiths in *Europe*, who make all kinds of arms for his troops, not inferior to what are made in *France* and *Holland*. Here died Doctor *Areſkin* phyſician to the Czar. His majeſty had ſo great a regard for him that he cauſed tranſport his corpſe to St. *Petersburgh*,

Doctor *Areſkin*'s death at *Alonitz*.

tersburgh, where he was with great pomp interred. Amongſt other obligations *Ruſſia* owes this phyſician, it was he that put the great imperial diſpenſary in the excellent order it is in at preſent; it furniſhes the armies and fleets, and the whole empire with drugs, and makes a great addition to the Czar's revenues. The doctor was ſuppoſed in the latter years of his life, to have kept a correſpondence with the Chevalier de St. *George*'s agents: whatever be of that, he was an agreeable, open hearted, fine gentleman.

The death of *Paddon* and *Sheremetoff*.

Vice-admiral *Paddon* an *Engliſh* gentleman, a perſon of ſingular experience in ſea affairs, as alſo the old Marſhal *Sheremetoff* dying this year, were both ſplendidly buried.

As the Czar was careful to honour his faithful ſervants after their death, he was likewiſe not forgetful of the living; Privy-counſellor *Tolſtoy* had the honour of the order of St. *Andrew* confered on him; Mr. *Romanzoff* was advanced to the charge of Major-general, and Mr. *Oſchacow* to that of Brigadier; theſe three had been very inſtrumental in diſcovering the Czarowich's conſpiracy and accomplices.

A new enquiry into malverſations.

On the other ſide, his majeſty being informed, that notwithſtanding all his vigilance and care, many principal perſons had again been guilty of great malverſations, found himſelf obliged to grant a new com-

BOOK XIII.

miſſion to examine into thoſe matters. He ſpoke to the commiſſioners, as follows: 'I 'do not believe that any one of you is ig- 'norant by the light of nature, and the ac- 'quired knowledge of the affairs of this 'world, that the two principal and firſt du- 'ties of thoſe whom GOD has eſtabliſhed 'to govern kingdoms, are to protect their 'ſubjects againſt their public enemies, in 'leading perſonally the armies to battle, in 'time of war, and to maintain peace and ju- 'ſtice amongſt the people impartially, by re- 'warding good actions and puniſhing the evil, 'without diſtinction of perſons. You know 'what I have done with regard to the firſt of 'theſe duties, from the beginning of my 'reign; and with regard to the ſecond, I have 'given you a moſt remarkable inſtance of the 'power that GOD has put into my hands, 'laying aſide all wordly conſiderations, when 'juſtice is in the caſe, eſpecially when the 'preſervation of my people, and the good 'of the ſtate require it. You have ſeen 'me puniſh the crimes of a ſon, who was 'perverſe, ungrateful, hypocritical and wick- 'ed, above all that can be immagined; I 'have likewiſe puniſhed the crimes of thoſe 'who were the aſſociates of his wicked- 'neſs: I hope thereby I have ſecured my 'chief work, which is to render the *Ruſſi- 'an* nation powerful and formidable, and 'my

The Czar's ſpeech to the court.

'my dominions flouriſhing; a work that has coſt me no ſmall pains, and my ſubjects much blood and treaſure, which the firſt year after my death would have been entirely overturned and trampled under foot, if I had not prevented it after the manner I have done.

'This great work being over, it is time I ſhould turn my attention to ſuppreſs the inſolence of thoſe who have abuſed the power I had put into their hands, for governing the provinces of my empire. Many, in violation of their oath, have oppreſſed (to the laſt degree) my poor people, and have inriched themſelves at the expence of their blood and ſweat. And ſince theſe people have deſerved ſo much, by furniſhing money, recruits, horſes and proviſions, in ſupporting my juſt cauſe, againſt an enemy with whom I have been theſe eighteen years at war; and have alſo ſupplied me in my other preſſing occaſions: it is moſt juſt I ſhould interpoſe, and deliver them from theſe blood-ſuckers. With this view, I am reſolved to eſtabliſh a tribunal, wherein my General of the infantry, *Adam Weid*, ſhall preſide; the Lieutenant-generals *Bauterlin* and *Slepenback*, the major-generals *Galitzen* and *Jayoſinsky*, and the Brigadiers *Wolkow* and *Uſtaſcow* aſſiſtants.

'This

BOOK XIII.

'This tribunal ſhall examine with all rigour, the adminiſtration and conduct of the perſons, a liſt of whom I ſhall put in their hands, and pronounce ſentence againſt ſuch as they ſhall find criminal. I hope the eſtabliſhing of this tribunal will be a means to keep all of them, in time coming, within the bounds of their duty, and influence them to execute with juſtice the power they are intruſted with.'

This tribunal did examine matters with all the rigour and ſeverity of the laws; and amongſt the tranſgreſſors were found, to every body's aſtoniſhment, the Czar's favourite Prince *Menzekoff*, Prince *James Dolgoruky* preſident of the ſenate, the High-admiral *Apraxin*, with many others. Prince *Menzekoff* being firſt called, and confronted with his accuſers, was found guilty of mal-adminiſtration of his majeſty's treaſure: he was ordered to deliver his ſword, and diſpoſe himſelf to undergo the ſentence that ſhould be pronounced againſt him. He ſubmitted, and retired to his palace, to continue in arreſt till further orders. After him was called the old Prince *Dolgoruky*, who appeared, and ſpoke with ſuch eloquence in his juſtification, that the judges thought themſelves obliged to aſk his majeſty's opinion before they ſhould pronounce ſentence

The offenders puniſhed.

ſentence againſt him. The High-admiral *Apraxin* being next called, and found guilty, was condemned to be degraded from his office, with confiſcation of his whole eſtate and effects, and commanded to arreſt in his own houſe till further orders; whereupon he gave up his ſword. Others were condemned to loſe both life and fortune; and none eſcaped of the whole liſt, (which was very numerous) but by paying fines, to the value at leaſt of what was alledged againſt them. The three firſt, Prince *Menzekoff*, *Dolgoruky* and *Apraxin*, the Czar conſidering their ſervices, made each pay a conſiderable ſum, and received them into favour, having given his promiſe to the firſt, that he ſhould never cauſe take his life.

An Ambaſſador ſent into *Perſia*.

The Czar ſent this year an Ambaſſador into *Perſia*, in order to eſtabliſh with the Schah a good correſpondence, and a free commerce amongſt their ſubjects on both ſides; which was willingly gone into. But the troubles ſoon after aroſe in that monarchy, to ſuch a height, that all commerce was ſtopped.

The council of the finances having repreſented to his majeſty the ſcarcity of money, and that they were not able to anſwer all his demands, this was one cauſe of his eſtabliſhing the already mentioned tribunal, which

BOOK XIII.

which took to task the principal persons of the empire. The Czar by this means, exacted so great a sum of the delinquents, over the whole nation, that it amounted to some millions of good silver, which he caused mix with an alloy of copper to the value of a fifth; which brought into the treasury twenty *per cent.* of all the current coin in the empire. The merchants made remonstrances, but to no effect; the necessities of the state requiring that expedient. The members whereof this tribunal was composed, were most of them Prince *Menzekoff*'s creatures, particularly General *Weid*, who presided, had been raised by him from nothing; so that he knew very well whose errand he was going.

Great sums brought into the treasury.

An observatory built.

The Czar amongst his other useful works, caused build on the island called *Wasel Ostrow*, on the river *Neva*, an observatory like that of *Paris*; where he had his great imperial library and chamber of curiosities. He also for his diversion created a new King of the *Samoides*, a barbarous unpolished people, inhabiting the north-east parts, beyond *Archangel*, towards the frozen sea: he was from *Portugal*, and of *Jewish* extraction. The Czar met with him first at *Hamburgh*, where finding him a comical fellow, and one who could be of use to him, took

took him into his ſervice in quality of jeſter, and ſome time after created him Count: (the ſovereigns of *Ruſſia* having never been in uſe of creating nobility, Prince *Menzekoff* and others, who wanted to aggrandize themſelves by titles of honour, were obliged to apply for them to the Emperor of *Germany:*) of this kind of buffoons the Czar kept ſeveral about his court, who to mortify ſtill more the old *Ruſſians*, (averſe to all politeneſs) would often teaze them and put tricks upon them; and when they complained to the Czar, he would anſwer, they are fools, what's to be done with them?

Creates his jeſter a Count.

In the midſt of theſe diverſions, the Czar got the mortifying accounts of the death of his only ſon, the Czarowich *Peter*, heir apparent to the crown; ſo that there was none remaining of his male iſſue but Prince *Peter*, ſon to the late Czarowich *Alexis*.

The Czarowich *Peter* dies.

The Czar had cauſed build a convent for the capuchins, and allowed others of the *Romiſh* clergy to live in his dominions, the jeſuits only excepted; who ſince the time of the falſe *Demetrius* never got footing in *Ruſſia:* the orders were by his majeſty renewed, that if any were either openly, or in diſguiſe, within his dominions, they ſhould inſtantly depart. It was occaſioned

The *Romiſh* clergy, except the jeſuits, encouraged.

BOOK XIII. by a misunderstanding that had arisen betwixt the court of *Vienna*, and that of *Russia*, on the subject of *Mechlenburgh*.

End of the Thirteenth Book.

THE

THE HISTORY OF *PETER* the *GREAT*, EMPEROR of *RUSSIA*.

BOOK XIV.

A new harbour and the great canal. 1720.

THE Czar having obſerved the convenient ſituation, cauſed make a ſea-port at *Rogerwick*, which is thought to be one of the ſafeſt next *Cronſtat* on all that coaſt. At the ſame time, he carried on the work of the canal of *Ladoga*, as neceſſary, and as profitable a deſign as any he could undertake; by the means of which, there was a communication opened betwixt the ocean and the *Caſpian* ſea, but his majeſty did not live to ſee this great work finiſhed.

The Czar carries on the war alone againſt *Sweden*,

The Czar ſeeing himſelf abandoned by his allies, at the ſolicitation of the court of *Britain*, took his meaſures to carry on the war againſt *Sweden* alone, notwithſtanding

BOOK XIV.

her being ſupported by the *Engliſh* money and fleets, and favoured by the kings of *Denmark* and *Pruſſia*, &c. He ordered an army of twenty-four thouſand foot and dragoons to march through *Finland*, into the north of *Sweden*, and at the ſame time ſent a ſtrong fleet, to make itſelf maſter of the *Bothnick* gulf.

The dyet of *Poland* being aſſembled in the beginning of 1720, ſent the palatine of *Maſovia* Ambaſſador to the Czar, whoſe inſtructions were to aſk reparation of the damages the nation had ſuſtained by the marches and counter-marches of the *Ruſſian* troops, the contributions they had raiſed, with ſeveral other exactions, ſuch as carrying off their horſes and cattle, *&c.* that tho' the republic had been injured to that degree, yet the dyet was inclined to ſend its complaints, expecting redreſs, rather than allow the nobility to mount their horſes, in order to free themſelves of the continual loſſes occaſioned by the *Ruſſians*.

Deals prudently with *Poland*.

The Czar at this juncture thought fit to manage the republic prudently, leſt they ſhould likeways make a ſeparate peace with *Sweden*, and renew their pretenſions on *Courland* and *Livonia*; and in that event declare war againſt him: ſo that he remitted this negotiation into the hands of Prince *Dolgoruky*, his Ambaſſador at that court.

He

He conferred with the deputies of the republic appointed by the King and ſenate. This miniſter had orders to ſignify to them, that the Czar his maſter was exceedingly diſpoſed to entertain a right union and good underſtanding with *Poland*; but that he was very deſirous to know if the letters wrote to him in anſwer to his, were to be looked upon as the ſentiments of the whole republic, ſince they were conceived in ſuch terms as might be interpreted a declaration of war? *Secondly*, If the treaty concluded at *Vienna*, betwixt the Emperor and the King of *Poland*, was done with the conſent of the republic? He likeways required that the town of *Dantzick* ſhould be obliged to execute the treaty entered into with the Czar; by which they were engaged to arm and keep up a certain number of frigates to join his majeſty's fleet.

The deputies anſwered to the firſt queſtion, It was well known at the time when it was judged proper not to continue the dyet of *Grodno*, but to remit the deliberations to that held at *Warſaw*, that it was reſolved the King, the Primate, and the Marſhal, in name of the gentry, ſhould write to the Czar, as they had done; that thoſe letters contained nothing which looked like a declaration of war, but only a neceſſary remonſtrance, that if the *Ruſſian* troops continued

BOOK XIV.

tinued any longer in the kingdom, notwithſtanding the often reiterated promiſes to remove them, the republic, would of neceſſity be obliged, to fall upon ſuitable meaſures to prevent the entire ruin of the provinces; that they ought to protect the town of *Dantzick*, from which the Czar had exacted great contributions; and that they had not explained themſelves otherways in regard to *Courland*, than by repreſenting the antient right of the crown, which they were determined to maintain.

As to the ſecond queſtion, that the republic had no knowledge of the treaty concluded at *Vienna*; that if the King (as elector of *Saxony*) had entered into any particular treaty, he had the right to do it, without communicating the ſame to the republic.

And as to the Ambaſſador's demand concerning *Dantzick*, they anſwered, that the kings of *Poland* always left them the entire enjoyment of their rights and privileges; and ſeeing the republic keeps no naval force, they never required of their ſubjects in the maritime towns to arm any veſſels; ſo that they could not give orders to the burghers of *Dantzick* to arm ſhips for the Czar, but if he had made any particular treaty with the town, that article ſhould be more at large examined.

In

In fine, after ſeveral repreſentations of mutual grievances, the deputies declared to the Ambaſſador, that the republic deſigned to take the opportunity of the Queen of *Sweden*'s diſpoſitions for peace, her majeſty having made proper ſteps for that end; therefore the republic did invite the Czar at the ſame time to conclude a peace or to diſengage them from their alliance, offering their mediation, with aſſurance that they deſired nothing more than to live in peace and in good underſtanding with his majeſty the Czar in any event.

The Palatine of *Maſovia* made his public entry at St. *Petersburgh* the 5th of *March*, in great ſtate. On the 7th he had a publick audience of the Czar, before whoſe throne he expreſſed himſelf as follows: The *Poliſh* Ambaſſador's entry and ſpeech.

'Moſt ſerene, and moſt powerful, Great 'Lord Czar, ſovereign of all *Ruſſia*: the 'moſt ſerene, and moſt powerful Great 'Lord King of *Poland*, Great Duke of *Li-'thuania*, and the republic, have ſent me 'to your Czariſh majeſty, in quality of their 'Ambaſſador in chief and plenipotentiary, 'in the ſole view of repreſenting and de-'claring to your majeſty, the inviolable 'friendſhip of the King, and republic, which 'has never been infringed in any manner, 'contrary to the alliance concluded; and 'at the ſame time to congratulate your maje-

'ſty

BOOK XIV.

'ſty on the many victories obtained over 'our common enemies, wherein the all 'powerful hand of GOD has ſo far ſup- 'ported your Czariſh majeſty, that all the 'world will admire and read with aſtoniſh- 'ment in ages to come, your immortal glo- 'ry.

'How glorious is it for a monarch to car- 'ry on ſo victorious a war, to put to ſea at 'the ſame time ſo powerful a fleet, at ſo great 'charge, to erect whole towns, fortificati- 'ons, ſea-ports, and canals, ſuch as your 'majeſty has done! This is an evident mark 'that the bleſſing of GOD attends the acti- 'ons of your majeſty.

'However his royal majeſty, and the re- 'public hope, that your Czariſh majeſty, 'having before your eyes their conſtant in- 'tentions and care to maintain the common 'ties, will in like manner fulfill the condi- 'tions on your ſide; by which your Czariſh 'majeſty will ſtill more and more add to your 'immortal glory, in doing juſtice to your 'faithful allies.

'For my part, I eſteem myſelf moſt hap- 'py that GOD has allowed me to appear 'before the throne of your majeſty, with 'my wonted veneration.'

This miniſter had immediately confe- rences with the *Ruſſian* miniſtry, who de- clared in few words, that his majeſty the Czar

Czar would not give up his pretenſions to *Courland*, far leſs to *Livonia*; and that the town of *Dantzick* ſhould execute the conditions they had agreed to with his generals; in fine, that the council of the finances ſhould examine whether his majeſty the Czar was indebted to the republic, or the republic to the Czar. BOOK XIV. The Czar's reſolutions

While theſe matters were in agitation at St. *Petersburgh*, peace was concluded at *Stockholm* with the King of *Pruſſia*, and the *Swedes* were on the point of concluding one with *Denmark*. The ſtates of the kingdom being aſſembled, the Queen reſigned the crown in favour of the Prince of *Heſſe-Caſſel*, her huſband, who thereupon was proclaimed and crowned King. All theſe meaſures did not look like peace with the Czar. The court of *Great Britain* was in good underſtanding with the regent of *France*, who had engaged to pay to the King of *Sweden* yearly, the ſubſidy his moſt chriſtian majeſty was wont to pay to that crown; ſo that when the *Swedes* ſeemed to be reduced to the laſt extremity, they received from *France* ſix hundred thouſand crowns. This with what they received from *Great Britain* and *Hanover*, made the *Swedes* take freſh courage, and give the Czar to underſtand, that he ſhould not have peace on the terms he imagined. But all

Peace between *Sweden* and *Pruſſia*.

The Queen of *Sweden* reſigns the Crown

BOOK XIV.

this was of no great ſignificancy: *Sweden* was drained both of men and proviſions; ſo that unleſs their new allies could ſupply both theſe wants, they could not propoſe to continue the war againſt *Ruſſia*. The Czar had his troops and fleets conſtantly ready, ſo that his expedition could be moſt part over before the *Britiſh* fleet could come to their aſſiſtance; which alſo happened on this occaſion, where, after having ordered his land army and fleets to be in readineſs, he ordered Mr. *Beſtucheff* his reſident at the court of *Great Britain* to preſent the remarkable memorial, * which that court did not think fit to anſwer otherways then by ordering Mr. *Beſtucheff* to depart the kingdom.

The *Britiſh* court orders the Czar's reſident to leave the kingdom.

This memorial contained a relation of all that had paſſed from the beginning of the war, their alliances when and for what; and how they came at laſt to abandon the Czar; which was ſtill the more glorious for him (ſaid the memorial) in that he made peace with *Sweden* on his own terms.

After all theſe ſteps, it was not to be doubted but the miniſters of *Great Britain*, conſidering what they had already done, would ſtill puſh their point: and as ſoon as the ſeaſon did permit, a ſquadron commanded

* The *Engliſh* miniſtry found fault with ſome expreſſions in that memorial, particularly that they were in an intereſt oppoſite to their country's.

manded by Admiral *Norris*, appeared before *Copenhagen;* with orders to join the *Swediſh* fleet. But that it might not be thought this ſquadron was ſent into the *Baltick*, with any other deſign than to ſupport the Court of *Britain*'s mediation for reconciling the court of *Ruſſia* with the new King of *Sweden*, as they had already reconciled *Denmark* and *Pruſſia* with that crown; therefore Admiral *Norris* before he ſailed from *Copenhagen*, wrote the following letter to Prince *Dolgoruky* the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſador at the court of *Denmark*.

SIR,

Sir *John Norris*'s letter to Prince *Dolgoruky*.

'The King my maſter has ordered me 'into theſe ſeas with a ſquadron of his ſhips, 'with a view to procure a juſt and reaſon- 'able peace betwixt the crown of *Sweden* 'and that of *Ruſſia*. His majeſty having 'much at heart the good of his ſubjects, as 'well as the intereſt of theſe nations who 'are in friendſhip with him, wiſhes ardent- 'ly that ſo chriſtian, ſo profitable, and ſo 'valuable a work may be brought to a good 'iſſue. To that effect his majeſty has 'commanded me to notify to all his Czariſh 'majeſty's miniſters, generals, and admi- 'rals, the renewal of his offers of media- 'tion for reſtoring peace betwixt the two 'crowns. The King could wiſh that his

BOOK XIV.

'majeſty the Czar, would ſeriouſly examine 'the ſtate of affairs, and give ear to ſolid 'conditions for an accomodation. And that 'his majeſty's good diſpoſitions may not 'prove fruitleſs for want of ſufficient powers, 'he has granted to his miniſter at *Stockholm*, 'as alſo to me, his Admiral, full power to 'treat in concert, in quality of plenipoten-'tiaries and mediators, to endeavour the 'concluding a reaſonable and juſt peace be-'twixt the two crowns. This is, Sir, what 'I intreat you would repreſent to his Cza-'riſh majeſty, with the aſſurance of my moſt 'humble reſpects, and that I ſhould eſteem 'myſelf extreamly honoured in receiving 'his orders on this occaſion.'

The Prince's anſwer.

Prince *Dolgoruky* anſwered as follows: 'I received, Sir, the letter you ſent me 'this morning by your Secretary, by 'which I underſtand that the King your 'maſter has ſent you into theſe ſeas, with 'a ſquadron of his ſhips, in order to pro-'cure peace betwixt the Czar my maſter 'and the crown of *Sweden*. All I can ſay, 'is, that his Czariſh majeſty has nothing 'more at heart than peace and tranquility, 'and that he has given clear and viſible 'marks thereof to all the world, during the 'whole courſe of this war. But ſince *Swe-'den* never had the like ſentiments, the 'continuance of the war can only be attri-

'buted

'buted to her backwardneſs. As to what you write me concerning the means and place of treating about this peace, I have no inſtructions from the Czar my maſter on that ſubject, ſo can give you no anſwer. If the court of *Great Britain* has any propoſals to make to his Czariſh majeſty, there are other means more proper to be made uſe of, ſo that I hope you will excuſe me from ſuch a commiſſion.'

The Czar was determined not to accept of the mediation of *Great Britain*, and wanted rather to accommodate matters betwixt themſelves. But in caſe *Sweden* inſiſted upon having a mediator, his Czariſh majeſty would admit of none other but the Emperor of *Germany*, ſeeing both courts had accepted of him in that quality ſome time before, when the congreſs was to be held at *Brunſwick*, whither the Emperor had ſent a Secretary, and the regency of *Sweden* had appointed Count *Neiling* to aſſiſt thereat. Beſides, there being no open rupture betwixt the courts of *Great Britain* and *Ruſſia*, he did not know the uſe of an *Engliſh* ſquadron intermeddling in his affairs; tho' at the ſame time it gave the Czar no great pain, but rather made him more forward in the execution of his projected plan. His army in *Finland*, near *Abo*, conſiſted of about twenty-four thouſand men, beſides

The mediation of *Britain* rejected.

BOOK XIV. beſides other ſmall bodies diſperſed here and there in that province, together with a ſtrong fleet of ſhips and gallies he had fitted out at St. *Petersburgh*, *Cronſtat* and *Revel*, which were in ſo good order, that the *Poliſh* plenipotentiary at his laſt audience, delivered his ſpeech with wonder, to behold the ſurprizing actions of this great Prince's reign. As this Ambaſſador left the court, there arrived at St. *Petersburgh*, one of the King of *Sweden*'s General-adjutants, who was ſent by his *Swediſh* majeſty to notify his acceſſion to the throne. He was ſoon admitted to audience, where, after having delivered the letters he was charged with, he made a ſhort ſpeech to the following effect: 'That the hereditary Prince of 'Heſſe-Caſſel, with conſent of the Queen 'his ſpouſe, and the ſtates of the kingdom, 'had aſcended the throne of *Sweden*; that 'his majeſty had a particular eſteem for the 'Czar, with whom he ardently wiſhed to 'conclude a ſolid and durable peace, and 'to entertain with his Czariſh majeſty true 'friendſhip and good neighbourhood; to 'which the King his maſter was willing to 'contribute as far as lay in his power.'

The new King of *Sweden*'s meſſage of compliment.

The Czar made anſwer to theſe marks of eſteem and friendſhip: 'That with all his 'heart he congratulated the King of *Swe*-'*den* on his acceſſion to the throne, and 'gave

The Czar's anſwer.

'gave his majeſty thanks for communicat- BOOK
'ing to him ſo much; that he was never XIV.
'againſt concluding a laſting peace with
'*Sweden*, having always had real diſpoſiti-
'ons thereto, provided the King of *Sweden*
'would take the ſame firm reſolution.'

His majeſty detained that officer ſome time, purpoſely that he might be witneſs to his preparations; carried him about to ſee the army and fleets, the better to ſatisfy his conſtituents, that tho' his allies had abandoned him, he was well able to manage his affairs; then diſmiſſed the officer with the ordinary paſſports.

The Czar thought himſelf in honour obliged this campaign to undertake ſome enterprize by ſea, were it for no other reaſon than to ſatisfy the world that he was not afraid of his new enemies; ſo having ordered his fleet for the *Bothnick* gulf, on the 7th of *Auguſt* the *Swediſh* Admiral came up with the *Ruſſian* fleet, which lay under *Lumland*, commanded by Prince *Galitzen*. The *Swedes* not thinking them ſo ſtrong as they really were, made the attack: the fight continued for ſome hours, till at laſt the *Swedes* were forced to retreat, with the loſs of four of their ſhips, and upwards of an hundred and forty pieces of cannon, and eight hundred men taken, killed and wounded. The *Swedes* publiſhed a quite different account

Prince *Galitzen* beats the *Swediſh* fleet.

BOOK XIV.

account of this battle than what the *Ruſſians* did. The Czar on this victory, after he had made his triumphant entry, cauſed ſtrike a medal, with his own effigies on the one ſide, and a ſea fight on the other, with this motto, CONDUCT AND VALOUR SURMOUNT ALL DIFFICULTIES; and as he always encouraged brave actions, he preſented Prince *Galitzen* with a ſword ſet with diamonds, and the reſt of the officers and ſoldiers in proportion. During the ſea expedition, the land army was not idle: the ſaid Prince *Galitzen* had ordered out two commands; one from *Vaſa*, conſiſting of five thouſand men, together with an hundred *Coſſacks:* they croſſed the *Bothnick* gulf, and debarked at *Uma* in *Lapland;* which they burnt, the *Swedes* retiring on their approach. After this, they burnt and deſtroyed ſeveral villages, gentlemens ſeats, wind and water-mills, and likewiſe the magazines; then returned to *Vaſa* loaded with plunder. The other detachment, commanded by the Brigadier *Samordin*, made alſo a deſcent on *Sweden*, on the other ſide the *Bothnick* gulf, but found the country quite abandoned deſtroyed by former expeditions; ſo that he returned with four priſoners only.

Burning and plundering in *Lapland*, &c.

As theſe hoſtilities were going on, the Czar ſent General-adjutant *Romanzoff* to the

the King of *Sweden*, in return of his civility, and to compliment his majesty on his accession to the throne; to assure him of the real esteem he had for his person; and that he should be heartily glad to find in his majesty dispositions for peace, as sincere as his own were. Besides this commission, he had orders to propose an exchange of prisoners, and a cessation of arms during the winter, if the *Swedes* inclined it.

Thr Czar sends a commission to the King of *Sweden*.

Mr. *Romanzoff* was received at *Stockholm*, as favourably as the *Swedish* envoy had been at St. *Petersburgh*; where, after having acquitted himself of his commission, to which the King returned an answer in a most polite manner, Mr. *Romanzoff* met with all manner of civility, and was at all the parties of pleasure, and diversions of the court. Falling one day in discourse with Count *Horn*, president of the senate, he propoſed the exchange of prisoners, *&c.* The Count told him, that the King could not go into that, unless they agreed on a cartel, both for the present and the future, which he had no commission to treat of; and as to the cessation of arms during winter, there was no use for that, seeing in that country all hostilities ceased on account of the cold. *Romanzoff* replied, that oft-times great bodies crossed over on the ice in the winter time, as it is a daily practice;

Civily received, but witnout effect.

BOOK XIV. that *Charles* X. of *Sweden* croſſed the *Sound* a little above *Elſinore*, with a great army on the ice, and beſieged *Copenhagen*: the Count ſaid, tho' all that was true, he did not ſee that a ceſſation of arms during the winter could be of any uſe, unleſs they could adjuſt before-hand the preliminaries of a peace. Mr. *Romanzoff* told him, his commiſſion did not go that length; but that he thought during that ſeaſon they might come to a better underſtanding, eſpecially by a correſpondence by letters; which the Count abſolutely refuſed. The *Swedes* are the moſt jealous people in the world, and underſtanding that the Duke of *Holſtein* had entered into a correſpondence with the Czar, and had a conſiderable party in *Sweden*, who thought his right preferable to the Prince of *Heſſe-Caſſel*'s, all intercourſe by letters was refuſed.

Sir *John Norris* prepares to return.

The ſeaſon being advanced, Admiral *Norris* thought of returning home with his ſquadron; tho' it was given out that he was to leave ſome few of his ſhips at *Stockholm*, which did not happen. The Czar believing the *Swedes* to be altogether averſe to peace, reſolved to make great preparations againſt the next campaign, in order to force them into it; and in caſe the *Britiſh* fleet ſhould return to theſe ſeas, he cauſed build at St. *Petersburgh* ſeveral large veſſels, from

from ſeventy to eighty guns, to oppoſe them if they had orders to act offenſively.

The Duke of *Holſtein* had a miniſter already at St. *Petersburgh*, who demanded the Czar's protection for his maſter: he being the eldeſt ſiſter's ſon, thought his right preferable to Princeſs *Ulrica*'s, who was the ſecond daughter of *Charles* XI. but the *Swedes* having aboliſhed the hereditary government, and made their crown elective, the Duke of *Holſtein* was by this means excluded from all right. The Czar generouſly granted him his protection, and not only invited him into *Ruſſia*, but ſent him a preſent of one hundred thouſand rix-dollars, taking pity of his caſe who once had views of ſucceeding *Charles* XII. in the crown of *Sweden*, which at preſent he was entirely out of hopes of, unleſs by the Czar's aſſiſtance he could bring it about. The King of *Denmark* was in poſſeſſion of his dutchy of *Sleſwick*; tho' the court of *Great Britain* and others, ſtood engaged to get it reſtored.

The Duke of *Holſtein* applies to the Czar.

In the beginning of the year 1721, General-adjutant *Romanzoff*, in the frequent conferences he had with Count *Horn*, aſſured him of the Czar's hearty and ſincere inclinations for peace; and that it was with the greateſt regret imaginable, he was every year obliged to ruin and deſtroy the pro-

BOOK XIV.

vinces of *Sweden*, to make the King accept of the reaſonable conditions he had offered. The Count gave attention to all this; and tho' Mr. *Romanzoff* had no orders to enter upon particulars, yet on his return to St. *Petersburgh*, having informed the Czar, that he believed the *Swedes* would go into a cartel, and probably further, he ſent Prince *Megerſky* to *Stockholm* to hear their propoſals. This ſtep of the Czar's, convinced the *Swediſh* miniſtry of his good intentions, ſince he had the conqueſts and all advantages on his ſide, notwithſtanding of their new allies; they ſaw plainly, that it was not in their power to make oppoſition to the Czar's great force, and therefore reſolved to make the beſt of it, and not allow the kingdom to be quite over-run. This was the reſult of their conferences with *Megerſky*, who on his return to St. *Petersburgh*, was ſoon after followed by Mr. *Dalhman*, one of the King of *Sweden*'s General-adjutants, who on pretence of regulating the conditions of a cartel, for relief and exchange of priſoners, made ſome ſteps towards a peace, and propoſed in order thereto, that if his Czariſh majeſty would agree to a ceſſation of arms for the whole year following, his majeſty the King of *Sweden* would willingly conſent to it. The Czar, who had made preparations, and diſpoſed every

The *Swedes* inclined to make peace, 1721.

every thing for the enſuing campaign, wiſely conſidered that his going into a ceſſation of arms for a whole year, might give the *Swedes* time and opportunity to form new alliances, and to augment their forces; ſo he rejected this propoſal, but at the ſame time gave them to underſtand, that he would accept and agree to the mediation of *France*; M. *de Campredon* miniſter at *Stockholm* from that crown, having made ſome ſteps for that end. This was ſufficient: the court of *Sweden* were no ſooner informed of it, than they with all expedition entreated M. *de Campredon* to repair to St. *Petersburgh*, and hear the Czar's propoſals. This miniſter found his Czariſh majeſty in the ſame diſpoſition he had ever been in ſince the congreſs of *Allandt*, declaring he would not take advantage of the ſucceſs he had had ſince that time, nor inſiſt on the great charges he had been at, through the obſtinacy of the enemy, but would ſtand to the conditions he had cauſed propoſe at *Stockholm* by Counſellor *Oſterman*. This the *French* miniſter undertook on the part of the *Swedes*; and on his return to *Stockholm*, they ſoon agreed on the place where the congreſs was to be held; which was *Nieſtadt*, a little convenient town in *Finland*, ſome few leagues diſtant from *Abo*.

The court of *France* mediates.

Conſidering

BOOK XIV.

Conſidering the animoſities that ſeemed to be betwixt the courts of *Great Britain* and *Ruſſia*, the conceſſions the crown of *Sweden* had made to *Pruſſia* and *Hanover*, &c. it might have been expected that theſe powers would have aſſiſted *Sweden* at this juncture in its diſtreſs. A body of twenty-five or thirty thouſand veteran troops ſent to aſſiſt the *Swedes* by the reſpective powers, would in all likelihood have obliged the Czar to accept of much worſe conditions. But it ſeems, they were all willing that *Sweden* ſhould be weakened: the Emperor had not forgot the bloody wars carried on by *Guſtavus Adolphus* in the empire, and by the *Swediſh* kings ſince. Had the late *Charles* XII. been as ſucceſsful as he had reaſon to expect, againſt the Czar, who knows to what length he might have carried matters? ſo that it was much ſafer to allow *Sweden* to be diſmembred, and confined within her old limits, rather than be expoſed every new reign to be overrun with ſwarms of *Goths*. Only *Denmark* did not draw * ſtake: the dutchy of *Sleſwick* did not anſwer expectation, having been obliged more than once to reſtore it to the right owner. *Schonen* and *Blecking* was

Several powers not friendly to *Sweden*.

* *Denmark* had got ſomewhat, *viz. Bremen* and *Verden*, which were ſold to the elector of *Hanover*, tho' not at a high price.

was what the King of *Denmark* aimed at; which if he had got, *Sweden* had been reduced to its primitive ſtate: but whether the depreſſing of *Sweden*, and the aggrandizing of *Ruſſia*, will prove an advantage to the reſt of *Europe*, muſt be left to the public to judge. One thing is evident, *Ruſſia* has many advantages that *Sweden* never had: in the firſt place, a vaſt and plentiful country, increaſing daily, not only in its inhabitants, but in every thing elſe that can render a monarchy powerful; a numerous well diſciplined army; powerful fleets; letters and regulations introduced to that degree, that nothing in *Europe* can go beyond it; and all by the indefatigable endeavours of the Emperor *Peter* the Great. And to ſupply the greateſt want, that great Prince lately diſcovered in his country (near *Siberia*) mines of gold, ſilver, and copper, which have already been wrought at forty *per cent.* advantage.

During theſe tranſactions, the Czar had the accounts ſent him by his miniſter at the *Porte*, that the Sultan had renewed, and prolonged the laſt treaty of peace, and had ſent orders to the Cham of *Tartary*, to ſuppreſs the incurſions of his ſubjects on the *Ruſſian* dominions, otherways he could not protect them.

Mean

BOOK XIV.

Mean time, the Czar believing the court of *Great Britain* would uſe its endeavours to oppoſe the peace now going on, ſaid he would let that nation ſee he would diſtinguiſh betwixt the people and the miniſtry, who he imagined did not altogether act for the good of the country. He publiſhed an edict, wherein he allowed to the *Britiſh* nation full ſecurity and liberty of commerce over his whole dominions, notwithſtanding the affront he had lately met with in the perſon of his reſident, which he ſaid ſufficiently intitled him to make reprizals, if he had a mind to it.

The Czar gives a favourable edict for *Britain*.

At laſt plenipotentiaries were appointed to meet at *Nieſtadt*. The King of *Sweden* named on his part Count *Lillienſted*, and General *Stromfeld*. The Czar ſent General *Bruce*, and his Privy-counſellor *Oſterman*.

The Duke of *Holſtein* arrived at the Czar's court, where he was very graciouſly received: the Czar promiſed him to have his intereſt as much at heart as his own.

M. *de Campredon* miniſter from *France* at the *Swediſh* court, having had ſeveral conferences with the *Ruſſian* miniſtry at St. *Petersburgh*, inſiſted ſtill on a ceſſation of arms for a whole year, which for the reaſons already given, was not agreed to. He was now told that his Czariſh majeſty's reſolutions were

were abſolutely taken; which were, that he was ready to reſtore to the crown of *Sweden* all the conqueſts he had made, reſerving only *Ingria*, *Carelia*, *Livonia*, *Eaſtonia*, the town of *Wiburg*, together with *Helſingfors* and their diſtricts; that the Czar would not depart from theſe articles; that if *Sweden* had a mind to treat on theſe conditions, the conferences might begin, and he ſhould hear what the *Swedes* demanded on their part; that a ceſſation of arms could be of no uſe, ſince if the King of *Sweden* was in earneſt, peace would be ſoon concluded.

Conferences at *Nieſtadt*.

The plenipotentiaries of both ſides repaired forthwith to *Nieſtadt*, and entered upon conferences; but not ſo ſoon as to ſtop the *Ruſſian* troops from making a deſcent on *Sweden*. Major-general *Lacy*, who commanded in *Finland*, embarked with about ſix thouſand *Ruſſians* and *Coſſacks*; ſet ſail from *Allandt* the 27th of *May*, and came before a place called *Eſerum*, in the neighbourhood of *Gevel*, where he diſembarked his troops, and marched towards *Sunderham* and *Likwikſholm*, and afterwards as far as *Tima*; burning and deſtroying every thing without the loſs of one man, the country being quite diſpeopled. He marched almoſt through an hundred pariſhes before he got the length of *Uma*, above an hundred *Swediſh* leagues which are not ſmall ones. Their

Sweden ſuffers in the mean time.

BOOK XIV.

greateſt loſs was the iron forges and mills, with a magazine of ammunition and arms; all which he deſtroyed, and had not deſiſted, if he had not got orders from the Czar on the agreeable accounts he had that the preliminaries were adjuſted and a ceſſation of hoſtilities agreed to. This his Czariſh majeſty immediately cauſed publiſh; and it was intimation enough to the *Britiſh* ſquadron to retire, and to ſhow them at the ſame time, that the King of *Sweden* had no more uſe for their ſervice. Admiral *Norris*, who had entered theſe ſeas ſooner than ordinary this year, ſailed directly for *Copenhagen*; not well pleaſed, as was ſaid, that he could not thwart the negotiations at *Nieſtadt*, and that the King of *Sweden* had ſo eaſily parted with *Carelia* and *Livonia*, which he did to ſave his nation from being intirely ruined. On the other hand, the Czar granted ſome conceſſions which were advantageous to the *Swedes*, in the melancholy ſituation of their affairs; this readineſs to yield on both ſides ſoon put an end to the conferences, and peace was concluded in all appearance to their mutual ſatisfaction: the principal articles are as follow.

Peace concluded betwixt *Ruſſia* and *Sweden*.

I. Eternal peace and friendſhip.

II. All hoſtilities ſhall ceaſe three weeks after the peace is ſigned.

III. *Sweden*

III. *Sweden* yields *Livonia*, *Eaſtonia*, *Ingria* with a part of *Carelia*, *Wiburg* with the *Iſlands* of *Oeſel*, *Drago*, *Maen*, &c. The Czar reſtores to *Sweden Finland*, with all the reſt of the conqueſts; as alſo two millions of rix-dollars, payable at two terms, conform to a ſeperate article.

IV. All theſe countries ſhall be evacuated and given up to *Sweden*, four weeks after the ratifications are exchanged.

V. The *Swedes* ſhall be allowed yearly to buy to the value of fifty thouſand rubles of grain, at *Riga*, *Revel*, and *Wiburg*, without paying duty, unleſs the harveſt proves bad, or ſome other important reaſon.

VI. The Czar ſhall not meddle with the affairs of *Sweden*, particularly in regard to their form of government.

VII. The limits condeſcended on by the treaty ſhall be regulated by commiſſaries, after the exchange of the ratifications.

VIII. All theſe countries yielded by *Sweden* to the Czar, ſhall enjoy their rights and privileges, together with their religion as before; and with regard to their eſtates and effects, every one ſhall enjoy what he can make appear to belong to him.

IX. The confiſcations whether heritage or other poſſeſſions, ſhall be reſtored; thoſe who will ſwear fidelity to the Czar may do it, which ſhall not hinder them from entering

BOOK XIV.

into foreign ſervice; but thoſe who will not, ſhall have three years allowed them to diſpoſe of their effects, whether in lands or money.

X. All priſoners ſhall be liberated on both ſides, on payment of their debts, but thoſe who have a mind to ſtay ſhall have their choice.

XI. The King of *Poland* is comprehended in this treaty, and the *Swedes* ſhall enter into negotiations with him, by the Czar's mediation.

XII. The *Swedes* ſhall be favourably uſed with regard to commerce.

XIII. All ſhips which are in danger of being caſt away, ſhall receive all poſſible ſuccour, and when ſhipwrecked, the effects ſhall be ſaved as far as they poſſibly can.

XIV. The miniſters who reſide at each court, ſhall in time coming, have their charges defrayed by their own maſters.

There were other articles relating to *Hanover*, *Holſtein* and *Mechlenburgh*; but the *Swediſh* plenipotentiaries having no orders to treat on the affair of the Duke of *Holſtein*, theſe were all laid aſide.

Great rejoicings.

Great rejoicings were at St. *Petersburgh* and *Moſcow* on this peace; as alſo at all the courts where his Czariſh majeſty had miniſters. The rejoicings at St. *Petersburgh* continued fifteen days, and began with the publication

publication of the peace in the great church; where the imperial, the *French*, the *Pruſſian* and *Dutch* miniſters were preſent. After divine ſervice, the treaty being audibly read, the Biſhop had a fine diſcourſe; after which the Great-chancellor, Count *Golofkin*, harangued his majeſty in the name of the ſenate and the whole nation, giving him the title of *Peter* the Great, Father of the country, and Emperor of all *Ruſſia*; which was followed by a triple diſcharge of the artillery, from the ramparts, and fleet, accompanied with the conſtant huzzas of the people, who were regaled in all corners of the ſtreets, the fountains running with wine; and at night there were illuminations and fire-works. The *Swediſh* plenipotentiaries received preſents from his Czariſh majeſty; the firſt, ten thouſand rubles; the ſecond eight; and the Secretary to the embaſſy two.

The news of the peace was ſoon ſpread over the whole empire, with orders to ſet at liberty all the *Swediſh* priſoners; but the moſt part of them choſe to continue in *Ruſſia*, where they had got ſettlements, and found themſelves much eaſier than ever they had been before. The Czar made a preſent to Admiral *Ehrenſhield* of his picture ſet with diamonds, and on his recommendation,

BOOK XIV.

dation, the King of *Sweden* advanced him to the rank of Admiral.

After the rejoicings were over, this great Prince, who never could be idle, made ſeveral new regulations, particularly, he confirmed the former order of bringing all goods for export to St. *Petersburgh*, which he deſigned to make another *Amſterdam* or *London*, and gave great encouragement to foreigners, as well as natives, to come and reſide in that new town; tho' this year they met with great diſcouragement by the riſing of the waters ſo high, (ſeven feet above whatever they had been known before) and getting into the vaults, that it occaſioned the loſs of ſeveral millions of rubles. But nothing could diſcourage his Czariſh majeſty, or make him give over any of his works; that of the great canal was ſtill going on, in which twenty thouſand men were daily employed.

New regulations.

The Czar having cauſed notify to the ſovereigns, with whom he was in friendſhip, the peace of *Nieſtadt*, theſe princes and ſtates ſent orders to their miniſters to compliment him on that great event. The Vice-chancellor *Shafferoff* intimated to them, that his Czariſh majeſty had taken the title of Emperor; which his faithful ſubjects, the ſenate, and all the ſtates of the empire had begged him to accept of. He told

The Czar takes the title of Emperor.

told them further, that his majeſty's pretenſions to that title were well founded; for proof of which, he expoſed a printed copy of a letter wrote from the Emperor *Maximilian* to the Czar; as alſo originals from the republic of *Venice*, the kings of *Spain* and *Great Britain*, where the title of Emperor was given to the ſovereigns of *Ruſſia*. His majeſty took this reſolution about the end of *November*; ſo that henceforward, in place of Czar, he was called EMPEROR OF ALL RUSSIA, and with great juſtice. It was in conſequence of the ſenate and the nation's requeſt, that his majeſty ordered his titles to be regulated, as in the beginning of the next book.

End of the Fourteenth Book.

THE

THE HISTORY OF *PETER* the *GREAT*, EMPEROR of *RUSSIA*.

BOOK XV.

HIS imperial majeſty having regard to the requeſt of his faithful ſubjects, with reſpect to his titles, ordered that in time coming they ſhould be expreſſed in foreign letters as follows: Book XV.

We *Peter* I. by the grace of God, Emperor and ſovereign of all *Ruſſia*, of *Moſcow*, *Kiow*, *Wolodimer*, and *Great Novogrod*, King of *Caſan*, *Aſtracan*, *Siberia* and *Douria*, Lord of *Pleſkow*, Great Duke of *Smolenſko*; Duke of *Livonia*, *Eaſtonia*, *Carelia*, *Tweer*, *Permia*, *Winta*, *Bulgaria*, &c. Great Duke of *Niſinovogrod*, *Czernikow*, *Reſan*, *Roſtow*, *Jeroſlaw*, *Bielozirow*, *Uddoria*, *Obdoria*, *Condoria*, and ſovereign of all the ſeptentrional parts to the frontiers of

BOOK XV.

China, hereditary Lord and poſſeſſor of *Georgia*, *Cabardia*, *Chzorraſſia*, and *Gorſky*, &c. &c. &c.

His imperial majeſty, beſides intimating them to the miniſters reſiding at his court, cauſed his ambaſſadors and envoys at foreign courts, demand theſe titles of the reſpective ſovereigns and ſtates. The Grand Seignior, the King of *Pruſſia*, and the ſtates of *Holand*, were amongſt the firſt who acknowledged theſe titles; others waited till they ſhould ſee what their neighbours did. The King of *Pruſſia*'s miniſter declared to his imperial majeſty his maſter's reſolution by the following diſcourſe.

The Czar's titles acknowledged by the King of *Pruſſia*, &c.

'Moſt ſerene and moſt potent Emperor and ſovereign: his majeſty the King of *Pruſſia*, my moſt gracious maſter and ſovereign, no ſooner heard from me, that your majeſty at the entreaty of your faithful ſtates and ſubjects, had reſolved to accept of the quality and title of Emperor, than his majeſty ordered me without delay, to acknowledge your majeſty in quality of Emperor, and to compliment you on that high dignity, ſo ſuitable to your imperial majeſty's redoubted force both by ſea and land, and the many kingdoms and ſtates you poſſeſs in ſovereignty: and ſince ſeveral monarchs and ſtates have formerly as a natural conſequence, con-

'ferred

'ferred on the ſovereigns of *Ruſſia* the title of Emperor. What Prince indeed can with better right get that eminent title than your imperial majeſty, who is endued with ſuch great talents both for war and peace, that if by order of ſucceſſion your imperial majeſty had not been placed on the throne, GOD on the account of your eminent qualities would have raiſed you to it?

BOOK XV.

'Your imperial majeſty's known modeſty does not in your preſence allow me to enlarge on the heroic actions, nor to amplify theſe elogies which the whole univerſe is full of: ſo I ſhall content myſelf, to wiſh, in name of my moſt gracious King and ſovereign, that GOD would pleaſe to continue to your imperial majeſty perfect health and proſperity to a good old age, with all other bleſſings; and that your majeſty may perſiſt in that ſincere friendſhip towards the Royal family of *Pruſſia* as hitherto; and which the King my moſt gracious ſovereign and maſter will not fail to cultivate, by all imaginable means.'

The King of *Denmark* was not ſo condeſcending: he was afraid that by granting this high title, his imperial majeſty would be authorized, in his pretenſions to a free paſſage through the *Sound*. His miniſter at *Copenhagen* inſiſted on his maſter's reaſons

BOOK XV.

The King of *Denmark*'s behaviour in that point.

for ſupporting that pretenſion, but his *Daniſh* majeſty would by no means agree to it, conſidering that *Sweden* would not fail to proteſt againſt the article of peace lately concluded betwixt her and *Denmark*, whereby the *Swedes* obliged themſelves to pay the ſaid duty, which ſhe had been exempted from before; and beſides, other ſtates, ſuch as *Great Britain* and *Holland*, who were fully as powerful at ſea as the Emperor of *Ruſſia*, would in like manner pretend to the ſame privilege. It is well known alſo, that the King of *Denmark* draws a great part of his revenue from that impoſt. There was another thing in the caſe, the diſappointment of the intended deſcent on *Schonen* ſtuck ſo in his *Daniſh* majeſty's ſtomach, it was no wonder he ſhewed ſome difficulty as to the Czar's titles.

After having made the neceſſary regulations, in the ſhort interval of time ſince the ratification of the peace, his imperial majeſty was reſolved to cauſe his faithful ſubjects at *Moſcow* partake of the rejoicings on that occaſion, and where his preſence was alſo neceſſary. He deſigned to enter that great city in triumph; and the inhabitants being advertiſed of his intentions, made ſuitable preparations. His majeſty, accompanied by the whole court and foreign miniſters, ſet out for his old capital on the 17th of *December:*

cember: he arrived himſelf on the 25th, and waited the arrival of the whole court to the 29th, that they might be preſent at this great ſolemnity. BOOK XV.

His imperial majeſty entered the city through the firſt triumphal arch, at the head of his firſt regiment of guards, as Colonel; he paſſed forward toward the ſecond arch, where he was harangued by the Archbiſhop of *Novogrod*, at the head of the clergy; after which, he marched on to the third, which had been erected by Prince *Menzekoff;* then to the fourth, where he was harangued by Prince *Trubetſkoy*, at the head of the magiſtracy: all this while the guns firing; with all other demonſtrations of joy, and at night, illuminations and fire-works, ſuch as had been before at St. *Petersburgh.* The Czar's triumphant entry into *Moſcow*, 1722.

To this triumphant entry, feaſts, and all manner of diverſions ſucceeded; which continued above a week, during which time his majeſty and the miniſtry made ſeveral profitable regulations in regard to the civil government, the army, the coin, commerce and navigation. But above all, his favourite and principal ſcheme was that of the ſucceſſion; for which purpoſe, in preſence of all the clergy, the ſenate, and other ſtates of the empire, he delivered himſelf in the following manner:

'WE

BOOK XV.

'WE *Peter* I. Emperor and ſovereign of all *Ruſſia*, &c. None are ignorant with what wickedneſs (like *Abſalom*) our ſon *Alexis* was poſſeſſed, and that his bad deſigns were not prevented by ſuch a repentance as he ought to have had, but only by the mercy of GOD towards us and our dear country, as fully appears in the manifeſto publiſhed on that occaſion. Thoſe deſigns proceeded from no other ſource than the antient cuſtom of ſettling the ſucceſſion on the eldeſt ſon; for which cauſe he never would give attention to our paternal reprehenſions and exhortations. I do not comprehend how this bad cuſtom could prevail, ſeeing not only it has been altered in particular families, according to the judgment of wiſe and prudent parents; but alſo, if we look into holy write, we ſhall ſee that *Rebecca* the wife of *Iſaac*, when her huſband was far advanced in years, procured the hereditary right to her youngeſt ſon. The ſame has been done by our predeceſſors; in particular, Czar *John Baſilowich*, of glorious and happy memory, who was not only great by name, but alſo in action, ſince he reunited our country, after it had been divided amongſt the ſons of *Wolodimer*. What he did

The Czar's declaration to the ſucceſſion.

'did execute was not in right of primoge-
'niture, but by his own good pleaſure; he
'changed his ſucceſſor twice, in hopes to
'find a worthy one, that the nation might
'be kept entire, and never more be divided.
'Firſt, he pitched on his grandchild *De-*
'*metrius* to ſucceed him, in excluſion of
'his own ſons; but afterward he depoſed
'the ſaid Prince, tho' he had been crown-
'ed, and conferred the ſucceſſion upon
'his ſon. It is eaſy to find many ſuch
'examples, which we ſhall forbear to men-
'tion on this occaſion; but which ſhall be
'publiſhed ſeparately hereafter.

'It was from this ſame view, and the
'paternal care we have of our ſubjects, to
'prevent the ruin of families by unworthy
'ſucceſſors, that in 1714 we cauſed publiſh
'an ordinance, by virtue of which, the
'immoveable eſtate might be conveyed to
'the eldeſt ſon, tho' the parents were left
'at full freedom to convey their eſtates to
'any ſon they had a mind, appointing the
'moſt capable, to preſerve the ſucceſſion
'from being diſſipated by wicked and pro-
'digal heirs.

'How much more then are not we ob-
'liged to take care of our empire, which
'is this day (as every body knows) by the
'bleſſing of GOD, much more extended?
'Therefore, we have thought proper to
'make

BOOK XV.

'make a law, according to which, it ſhall always be in the power of the reigning ſovereign to give the ſucceſſion to whom he pleaſeth; as alſo to lay aſide him he has named, if found incapable: ſo that the children both of Prince and people ſhould ſtudy virtue, and not become wicked, after the ſad example that has been ſet before you.

'For which cauſe, we ordain that all our faithful ſubjects, as well eccleſiaſtics as laicks, confirm by oath our preſent ordinance, before GOD and on his Holy Evangel; and that in ſuch a manner, that all who ſhall oppoſe, or put any other conſtruction on it than what is literally expreſſed and intended, ſhall be reputed as traitors, and doomed to death, with confiſcation of their eſtates and effects.'

At *Prebraſinſky*,
Feb. 5th 1722.

PETER.

All ſwear to the Emperor's nomination.

After which, his imperial majeſty declared to the whole aſſembly, his intention was, that all and every one ſhould ſwear on the Holy Evangel, and ſubſcribe with their hands, that they ſhould not only approve of the choice his majeſty ſhould make of a ſucceſſor to the throne; but that they ſhould

ſhould acknowledge for their Emperor and ſovereign, any perſon his majeſty thought fit to name for that effect. Every one took the oath, and ſubſcribed to the Emperor's will, being perſuaded that he would choice none for his ſucceſſor, but who was worthy, and capable to ſupport not only the profitable eſtabliſhments he had made, but alſo to follow out his views and projects. People were divided in their conjectures as to his imperial majeſty's choice: ſome believed he would prefer Mr. *Naritſkin*, his mother's nephew; others, Prince *Michael Galitzen*, a perſon of a good family, and an excellent officer: Prince *Menzekoff*, the Czar's favourite, had vanity enough to think it was deſigned for him. But to none of theſe had his imperial majeſty intended the ſucceſſion, nor indeed was it to be known till ſome time after. If his ſon the Czarowich *Peter* had been alive, he had certainly been the perſon; of whoſe education the Emperor would have taken ſpecial care, to have formed him, and made him fit to govern after his own way. The Czarowich *Alexis* was quite ruined in his education; his majeſty having no regard for the mother, even neglected the ſon, till he was paſt all hopes of amendment.

The treaty of *Nieſtadt* had no ſooner put an end to a long and expenſive, as well

BOOK XV.

as a dangerous war, than new laurels preſented themſelves to the Emperor.

Somewhat of the affairs of *Perſia.*

Selim IV. King of *Perſia*, had ſucceeded his father *Selim* III. *Anno* 1694. He was an effeminate Prince, brought up amongſt the women, ignorant of the art of government, and entruſted all to his prime Viſier. He was often inſulted by the *Tartars*, *Arabs* and *Moguls*, and had no other way to get rid of them but by force of money. The Emperor *Peter* made an alliance with this Prince, by which, he obtained leave for his caravans to paſs through a part of *Perſia* into *China*.

Candabar is a kingdom ſometimes under the protection of the *Perſians*, and at other times under that of the Great *Mogul*. *Mahomet Bakir*, a Prince of *Tartary*, ſubdued it; and in reward of the ſervices he had done *Aureng Zeb* the Great *Mogul*, had ſome more lands added, by which he formed a pretty large dominion; but his ſon *Miriweys*, who ſucceeded him *Anno* 1712, being an ambitious Prince, and troubles ariſing in the *Mogul*'s country, through the diſputes among *Aureng Zeb*'s ſons about the ſucceſſion, *Miriweys* intended to fiſh in troubled waters; but was in doubt whether to fall firſt into the *Mogul*'s country, or into *Perſia:* but finding the laſt fitter for his purpoſe, he made alliances

ances with the *Tartars* and *Arabs*, who undertook to fall into the Schah's provinces. During theſe troubles, poor *Selim*, not knowing whom to truſt, conceived a jealouſy againſt his prime Viſier, and cauſed ſtrike off his head; whereupon a kinſman of the Viſier's, one of *Selim*'s generals, marched with a conſiderable body of troops into the *Schirwan*, ſurprized and took *Samachia*, a rich town; where amongſt others, ſome hundreds of *Ruſſian* merchants, who chanced to be there on account of trade, were barbarouſly murdered, and all their effects to a conſiderable value ſeized. This happened in 1720. Another misfortune befell the *Ruſſians* about the ſame time, their caravan was attacked in their return from *China*, by the *Usbeck Tartars*, in alliance with *Miriweys*, themſelves maſſacred, and all their effects ſeized.

Miriweys pretended to have no hand in theſe diſorders. He had not as yet taken off the maſk, but perſuaded the Schah, that he had entered his provinces with a view not only to bring his rebellious ſubjects to reaſon, but alſo to check the inſolence of the *Tartars* and *Arabs*; publiſhing through *Zablaſtan* and *Sigeſtan*, as he marched, that his deſign was to eſtabliſh the King's authority. He was an Omarite, as moſt of the *Tartars* are; and many of that

BOOK XV.

profeſſion are diſperſed over moſt of the provinces of *Perſia*. Theſe all joined *Miriweys*, without aſking any queſtions, the *Perſians* being followers of *Ali*, who are reputed hereticks by the *Turks*. *Miriweys* by this means having conſiderably augmented his army, marched towards *Kirman*, the capital of that province, where he gained the Governor, who ſurrendered on the firſt ſummons; then, after eſtabliſhing his affairs, he marched ſtraight to *Iſpahan*, the capital of *Perſia*, attacked the Schah, declaring himſelf Protector of the kingdom, and Generaliſſimo over all *Perſia*.

The Schah had ſome time before ſent an Ambaſſador to the Emperor, *Peter* the Great, (offering very advantagous conditions) for his aſſiſtance. This, together with the violences which had been uſed againſt the *Ruſſians*, determined the Czar to comply with the Schah's propoſals; but before he proceeded further, he ſent an Ambaſſador to the Schah, aſſuring him of his aſſiſtance. This Ambaſſador having entered *Perſia*, found the kingdom in ſuch confuſion, that he was forced to repair to *Miriweys*'s camp; where having demanded an audience, which was immediately granted, the Ambaſſador laid before him the ſubject of his commiſſion; that the Emperor his maſter's ſubjects had been barbarouſly

ouſly murdered at *Samachia*; as alſo, that his troops, in conjunction with the *Usbeck-Tartars*, had not only maſſacred the *Ruſſians*, but pillaged the merchandize and treaſure of his caravan in their way from *China*; that theſe violences were contrary to the rights of nations, and therefore the Emperor his maſter demanded an adequate ſatisfaction. BOOK XV.

Miriweys after having heard theſe complaints, anſwered, that he deſired nothing more than to live in good underſtanding with the Czar his maſter, who he was informed was a Prince both prudent and warlike; but that he adviſed him, if he intended to ſend more caravans to *China*, to make an alliance with the *Tartars*, particularly with the great Cham, in order to procure a ſafe paſſage for them; or, if not, to ſend with them ſufficient guards, ſuch as he underſtood was the practice at ſea, by ſending ſhips of force to protect their merchantmen. That as to the *Usbeck-Tartars*, his allies, he could give them no orders.

The Czar makes preparations againſt *Miriweys*.

As ſoon as his imperial majeſty had the accounts of this inſolent anſwer, he immediately iſſued out his orders to aſſemble a great army of *Tartars*, *Calmucks* and *Coſſacks*, in conjunction with twenty-four thouſand of his own beſt troops, deſigning to march himſelf at their head, in order to chaſtiſe

BOOK XV.

chaſtiſe the inſolence of this uſurper: he alſo cauſed in all haſte prepare veſſels for tranſport at *Aſtracan*. His army deſigned for this expedition, conſiſted of ſeventy or eighty thouſand men.

His Czariſh majeſty before he left *Moſcow*, eſtabliſhed a council of regency, leaving Prince *Menzekoff* at the head of it. Amongſt other alterations, he eſtabliſhed regular poſts betwixt *Moſcow* and *Aſtracan*; alſo regulations for the maritime affairs, ordering all merchant ſhips to be diſpatched preferably to all other buſineſs, and that no injuſtice ſhould be done them, under penalty of the value of the ſhip and cargo.

At laſt, his imperial majeſty and the Empreſs *Katharine* went from *Moſcow* by the way of *Colomna*, in the intention to continue the voyage to *Aſtracan*, by the river *Wolga*. The High-admiral *Apraxin*, Lieutenant-general *Butterlin*, Prince *Trubetſkoy*, the Hoſpodar of *Wallachia*, and the privy-counſellor *Tolſtoy*, were ordered on before, to forward the preparations at *Aſtracan*.

Meaſures taken for ſafety at home.

Whilſt this great monarch was going to enter upon a new war, as diſtant as important, his troops and fleets were not idle. Admiral *Gordon* put to ſea with the fleet; and the troops in *Courland*, *Livonia* and the *Ukraine*, moved from one quarter to another, not with deſign to undertake any thing,

thing, but to ſhew that he was prepared, in caſe any of the neighbouring powers ſhould form any projects in his abſence at ſo great a diſtance: the great names of *Mogul*, *Perſian*, *Tartar* and *Miriweys* magnifying daily, as always happeneth to diſtant objects.

The *Turks* were no ſooner informed of the great preparations making about *Aſtracan*, and the eaſtern provinces of the *Ruſſian* empire, than they took umbrage. The neighbouring Baſſas on the frontiers of *Perſia* acquainted the *Porte*, that the Emperor of *Ruſſia* had formed the project of ſubjecting *Gurgiſtan*, and annexing that province to his dominions; by which ſome thouſands of *Mahomedans* muſt fall into ſlavery. The prime Viſier upon this, ſent an Aga to the Czar, deſiring him to deſiſt from that enterprize. His majeſty cauſed notify to the Sultan, the inſults he had met with from the uſurper *Miriweys*, who under the cloak of religion, (the common cant on all ſuch occaſions) had debauched the Schah's ſubjects, and had ſucceeded ſo far as to force the rightful ſovereign from his capital; ſo that his ambition and inſolence ought to be cruſhed in time. And that the *Turks* and *Perſians* might not be ignorant of his real intentions, his majeſty cauſed publiſh the following manifeſto, which he diſtributed over

The *Porte* takes umbrage.

BOOK XV. over all the kingdom of *Perſia*, particularly along the *Caſpian* ſea, before he entered upon the expedition.

The Czar publiſhes a manifeſto.

'His majeſty the Emperor of *Ruſſia*, has 'thought proper to make known to all the 'inhabitants of the kingdom of *Perſia*, the 'Schah's faithful ſubjects, and to all con-'cerned, that his imperial majeſty is arrived 'on the frontiers of that kingdom, with 'his land and naval force, not in the in-'tention to reduce any of the provinces of '*Perſia* to his obedience, but only to main-'tain the lawful poſſeſſor on the throne, 'and to defend him powerfully, in con-'junction with his faithful ſubjects, againſt 'the tyranny of the uſurper *Miriweys*; as 'alſo to obtain ſatisfaction of him and his '*Tartars*, for the diſorders, maſſacres and 'robberies, committed on the ſubjects of 'the *Ruſſian* empire; as well as other a-'buſes. And that his imperial majeſty's 'good intentions may be made manifeſt, 'he graciouſly advertiſes the *Perſian* ſub-'jects under *Miriweys*'s command, to re-'turn and ſubmit to their lawful ſovereign, 'and pay him the allegiance and obedience 'they owe; warning all who henceforward 'ſhall perſiſt in their diſobedience and re-'bellion, of whatſoever rank or quality 'they may be, that they are to expect no 'mercy. Moreover, we have have given 'expreſs

'expreſs orders to our troops, not to com- BOOK
'mit any diſorders, under the ſevereſt pe- XV.
'nalties, on any part of the dominions of
'*Perſia*, or againſt any of the ſubjects
'and inhabitants of that kingdom.'

Here follows the account of this expedition, wrote by his imperial majeſty's orders, and ſent by him to the ſenate.

On the 29th of *July*, at ſeven o'clock at night, the whole fleet ſet ſail, conſiſting of two hundred and ſeventy-four veſſels of all kinds: on the 30th, we arrived at the mouth of the *Wolga*; and the 31ſt at *Schetire-Bogori*, where we received a letter from the Governor of *Terki*, which is a well fortified place, (formerly belonging to *Ruſſia*) containing a garriſon of two thouſand men.

The expedition into *Perſia*.

Auguſt the 1ſt the fleet ſailed, and after twenty-four hours caſt anchor near to *Gniley-Lapugia*. The 3d, it continued ſailing, and arrived towards night at *Souet-kin*. The 4th early it ſailed, and arrived in the afternoon, and anchored before the mouth of the river *Terki*, otherways called *Timonki*. Thence Lieutenant *Lapuchin* was ſent to the Governor of *Terki*, with the Emperor's manifeſto, wrote in *Arabick*, having orders to leave ſome copies with the Governor, and to ſend the reſt to *Derbent*, *Schimacca* and *Baku*, by thirty *Tartars* of *Ter-*

BOOK XV.

ki, and the like number of *Circaſſians*, he had taken along with him for that end.

The 6th in the morning we received advice, that Brigadier *Veteran*, who had been ſent over land with a body of dragoons towards *Andreoff*, had been attacked by the inhabitants, before he had committed the leaſt hoſtility. He charged them with ſo much vigour, that he forced them into the town, which he took, giving the pillage to the ſoldiers, and then ſet it on fire. It conſiſted of above three thouſand houſes, but ill fortified. This was the only place in all *Dagiſtan* that made oppoſition to the *Ruſſians:* their Prince called *Mahomet* fled. *Veteran*, after joining Major-general *Cropotow*, who had marched from *Aſtracan*, joined the army a few days after. The whole fleet entered within the bay, near to the port. *Simonoff* was ſent to find out a proper place for diſembarking, as near as he could to the mouth of the river *Agrachan*; where we arrived the 7th.

The 8th, at ſix in the morning, the ſignal for landing was given: it was ſo expeditiouſly done, that the whole infantry were landed before noon, notwithſtanding the difficulty they met with, the ſoldiers being obliged to carry aſhore the baggage, proviſions and ammunition; the ſhips not being able

able to get within fifty fathoms of it for want of water. BOOK XV.

The 11th, we raiſed a kind of fortification to cover the ſhips, which was perfected the 15th.

The 16th early, the whole army marched towards *Tarku*, leaving only in the entrenchments two hundred ſoldiers, and a thouſand *Coſſacks*, under the command of a Lieutenant-colonel; where we alſo left the ſick.

The 17th, about three in the afternoon, the whole army arrived near to the river *Soulack*, which they croſſed on bridges of boats. Here, two *Perſian* princes came to ſalute the Czar, *viz.* the proprietor of *Gorſky*, and Sultan *Mahomet:* the firſt brought him ſix hundred waggons drawn by oxen for the baggage, and an hundred and fifty fat cattle for the uſe of the army, and three fine *Perſian* horſes with rich furniture for the Czar. The ſecond ſent an hundred oxen for the army, and ſix fine *Perſian* horſes for the Emperor. It was the 21ſt before they got croſſed with the horſes and baggage.

The 22d the army marched: the dragoons and *Coſſacks* led the van; the rear waited for the coming up of proviſions from the entrenchments.

BOOK XV.

After the army had marched eight werſts from the *Soulack*, they came to a ſmall rivulet, which they croſſed on faſcines; then marched over the mountains towards *Tarku*, and encamped that night within eight werſts of the town. In this march they found but little water.

The 23d, the army came within ſix werſts of *Tarku*, where the Governor came to wait on the Czar, and conducted the army within three werſts of the town. On this march, we obſerved the foundations of a great town, which reached from the hills to the ſea.

The army continued here to the 26th, where the Czar received letters from the Governor of *Derbent*, and chief perſons in the place, ſignifying with what ſatisfaction they had received his imperial majeſty's manifeſto, and their joy on his arrival; aſſuring him that they would look upon all ſuch as traitors, who ſhould make any oppoſition to his troops.

The 27th, the army arrived at the ſmall river *Monas*, twenty-five werſts diſtant from *Tarku*.

The 28th, the army croſſed the ſaid river; as alſo that of *Boinac-Atzi*, over which was a ſtone-bridge. On this day's march they found the ruins of a great town: they encamped that night at *Old Boinac*.

The 29th, the army marched, and encamped that night near to the ſmall river *Nitzi*,

Nitzi, in the dominions of Sultan *Mahomut Udenich*.

The 30th, the Czar ſent three *Coſſacks* with orders to the Sultan, that he ſhould ſend a deputation to confer, and receive his commands; but the guide on his return reported, that they had been very ill received, and that he did not know what was become of the three *Coſſacks*. Towards three o'clock in the afternoon, the Sultan advanced at the head of a great body, and attacked the *Coſſacks*, and then the dragoons, who were too hard for him; for after having above five hundred killed, and thirty-nine made priſoners, he left the field: the Czar cauſed pillage and burn the Sultan's place of reſidence, and ſix villages more belonging to him; in one whereof, the three *Coſſacks* were found inhumanly maſſacred: upon which, the Emperor cauſed put the priſoners to torture. Some of them were perſons of diſtinction: they declared that they did not know the cauſe of ſuch cruelty, but that it had been done by the Sultan's orders; they alſo declared, that he had brought out ten thouſand men to the field, and could raiſe as many more. *September* 1ſt twenty-one of the priſoners were executed, by way of reprizal for the three *Coſſacks* they had maſſacred; another priſoner had his noſe and ears cut off, and then was ſent with

BOOK XV. with a letter; wherein the Czar reproached the Sultan with his tyranny and rebellion. The *Ruſſian* dragoons loſt on this occaſion about an hundred men, killed and wounded. The army encamped that night near the river of *Bug-Bagain*, over which they paſſed on two bridges, one of faſcines, and the other of boats.

The 2d, the army advanced near to the river *Darbach*, where the Czar received a letter from the inhabitants of *Baku*; in which they teſtified their joy for his arrival in the *Schirvan*, wiſhing earneſtly that his majeſty would take their town and country under his protection; by which they might be delivered from the rebels, againſt whom they had defended themſelves theſe two years bypaſt.

The 3d, the army marched, and encamped near *Derbent*. The Governor met the Czar with the keys of the town of ſilver, which he preſented. The army marched through the town under a triple diſcharge of all the guns, then went and encamped near the ſea. In this town, there were mounted on the ramparts, an hundred and ſeventy-eight iron guns, and ſixty braſs ones; with plenty of ammunition. The *Ruſſians* were as joyfully received into this place, as if it had been one of their own towns. *Derbent* is one of the ſtrongeſt and

and beſt ſituated in *Perſia*, and the key of the kingdom. It was built by *Alexander* the Great; and many monuments of his are as yet to be ſeen. The Czar continued here for ſome time, and regulated ſeveral affairs, tho' the beſt part of the army marched towards the river *Milonkenti*, fifteen werſts diſtant from *Derbent*, without hearing of the enemy. But the Czar fearing to fall ſhort of proviſions, the country being moſtly ruined by the *Tartars* and *Perſians* adhering to *Miriweys:* the ſeaſon being alſo pretty far ſpent, ſtopt his conqueſt for this year at the ſaid river; and having left a ſufficient body of troops in *Derbent*, he directed his march back to *Aſtracan*, where, having found, near the *Soulack*, a far more convenient place for embarkation than that in the bay of *Agrachan*, where he had cauſed raiſe the firſt entrenchment, he ordered the building of a fort, which he called *Holy Croſs*.

BOOK XV.

The 25th of *September*, the Czar ordered one thouſand *Coſſacks*, and four thouſand *Calmucks*, in conjunction with the *Boinacs*, who were faithful to the Schah, to burn and deſtroy the countries belonging to *Mahomut* Sultan of *Udinich*, and the *Perſian Uſmei:* none elſe had attacked and haraſſed the *Ruſſians* on their march. Theſe troops entered into the enemy's country, burnt and ruined

BOOK XV. ruined every where; killed a great many people, and returned to the bay of *Agrachan*, with upwards of four hundred priſoners, and a great deal of booty; and all the horſes and cattle they could drive. After which, the Czar embarked with the infantry for *Aſtracan*, whilſt the cavalry marched by land.

Miriweys makes oppoſition in vain,

During this expedition, the uſurper *Miriweys* had done all he was able to interrupt the progreſs of the *Ruſſians*: he had engaged the neighbouring *Tartars* to harraſs them on their march, and had advanced himſelf with a conſiderable body of troops the length of *Ghilan*; but hearing of the overthrow the Sultan of *Udenich* met with, he did not think fit to march farther into the country, till his imperial majeſty had retired. The Czar's generals, on *Miriweys*'s approach, gathered all the *Coſſacks*, *Calmucks* and *Tartars* together, marched with a good body of infantry from *Derbent*, and attacked the uſurper's fatigued army, which they put to the rout. Some of the neighbouring Chams, after the Czar's departure, altered their conduct by favouring *Miriweys*; but the moſt conſiderable amongſt them, had recourſe to his majeſty's protection, He returned with the whole court to *Moſcow*; the people beheld with joy their victorious ſovereign, who entered in triumph, cauſing

The Czar returns in triumph to *Moſcow*.

cauſing carry before him the keys of *Derbent*.

The power of this great Emperor who had ſubdued ſuch a large extent of country, with ſo little difficulty, but above all the gaining of *Derbent* (the key into *Perſia*) terrified *Miriweys*, who had many enemies in the heart of the kingdom, who had diſcovered his hypocriſy. The faithful *Perſians* could not forgive his dethroning their ſovereign, whoſe fate they were ſtill ignorant of; ſome believing him dead, others, ſhut up in a caſtle, or priſoner amongſt the *Turks*. In ſhort the uſurper became diffident of every body; even the *Tartars* diſapproved of his ambitious views, and did not think themſelves in ſafety, if he ſhould become maſter of *Perſia*; ſo that his only reſource was to make application to the *Turks*. He ſent an Ambaſſador to the Grand Seignior, remonſtrating to his highneſs, that religion and glory were intereſted in oppoſing the progreſs of the *Ruſſians*, who not content to have ſubdued both the provinces of *Dagiſtan* and *Schirvan*, they would not ſtop there, but infallibly, the enſuing year, would fall in upon *Georgia*, where there were chriſtian princes who would receive them with open arms. In fine, that he was informed the Schah was under engagement to the Emperor of *Ruſſia* to give off to him all the

Miriweys endeavours to ſtir up the *Turks*.

BOOK XV.

conqueſts he could make on the *Caſpian* ſea, provided he would aſſiſt him againſt the faithful *Turks*, who had taken up arms in defence of religion.

Miriweys's Ambaſſador accompanied his commiſſion with conſiderable preſents to the miniſters at the *Porte*; beſides of a long time the *Janiſaries* and *Spahys* breathed nothing but war; the Mufti was a declared enemy of the *Ruſſians*, as well as the Cham of *Tartary*; the prime Viſier alone was for peace, yet was obliged to diſſemble, and make all the preparations, as if war was to be declared, for fear of irritating thoſe of the contrary opinion. But at the ſame time he ſent an Ambaſſador to the Emperor of *Ruſſia*, to be informed of his deſigns, and if he was reſolved to puſh his conqueſts on the *Caſpian* ſea. The Emperor told him that the *Porte* had approved of his taking arms, to be revenged of the inſults and damages his ſubjects had received from the uſurping *Miriweys* and his allies; that he had undertaken nothing againſt his highneſs, but on the contrary, was abſolutely diſpoſed to obſerve faithfully the laſt treaty of peace.

The Sultan ſatisfied with the Czar's meaſures.

The Sultan was ſatisfied with his Czariſh majeſty's anſwer: but the Prince of *Dagiſtan*, having had recourſe to the Grand Seignior's protection, took occaſion to put him in mind of the obligation he was under to protect

protect all the *Mahomedans*. He publiſhed a manifeſto which he cauſed diſtribute amongſt the foreign miniſters at the *Porte*, ſhewing that the Emperor of *Ruſſia* had in the beginning of laſt year, with conſent of the ſublime *Porte*, entered *Perſia* with deſign to be revenged on the uſurper *Miriweys* for the abuſes committed againſt the ſubjects of *Ruſſia*, yet that the ſaid Emperor had at the ſame time made himſelf maſter of *Derbent*, and other places in the neighbourhood; whereby he had diveſted *Flagi Damit* of his principality, which had formerly belonged to the *Ottoman* empire, but had been taken by the *Perſians* during the wars with *Europe*; that the ſaid diſpoſſeſſed *Flagi Damit*, being put under the neceſſity of having recourſe to the powerful protection of the ſublime *Porte*, under the conditions of paying homage, and holding the ſaid principality of the *Ottoman* Empire, his highneſs, agreeable to the conſtitutions thereof, had granted his protection as to a faithful *Muſſulman*, ſo that if the Emperor of *Ruſſia* inclined to continue the peace with his highneſs, he ſhould immediately reſtore the ſaid principality to the diſpoſſeſſed proprietor.

BOOK XV.

The Prince of *Dajeſtan* publiſhes a manifeſto.

The prime Viſier, who as is already ſaid, was the only perſon for continuing the peace, propoſed that they ſhould ſound the Emperor of *Germany* to know what part he

BOOK XV. would take on ſuch an event. The Emperor declared that the ties were ſo ſtrong betwixt him and the Emperor of *Ruſſia*, that if he were attacked by the *Turks*, he would himſelf march to his aſſiſtance, ſo far did the Emperor of *Germany* favour *Peter* the Great on this occaſion! But nothing was of greater weight with the *Turks*, than the good offices of the Marquis de *Bonac*, Ambaſſador from *France* at the *Porte*; who repreſented, That the Emperor of *Ruſſia* had undertaken nothing againſt *Perſia*, but by the participation and approbation of the ſublime *Porte*, to be avenged of the injuries his ſubjects had ſuſtained from *Miriweys*. Beſides, that his great deſign was moſt of all to be regarded; which was to re-eſtabliſh the Schah on the throne of his anceſtors, all princes being concerned in point of intereſt, to make ſuch a cauſe their own: that the Emperor of *Ruſſia* had done nothing contrary to the peace ſubſiſting betwixt the two empires. Further, if the *Porte* took umbrage at the Emperor of *Ruſſia*'s conqueſts, he would make no more, reſerving only to himſelf the liberty of aſſiſting his injured neighbour againſt his unnatural and rebellious ſubjects: that the Cham, *Flagi Damit*, had been tributary to *Perſia*, and, after having declared for *Miriweys*, the Emperor of *Ruſſia* had,

on

on account of his unfaithfulneſs, diſpoſſeſſed him of the principality; and that his having recourſe to the protection of the ſublime *Porte* was of neceſſity, not choice. BOOK XV.

The mentioning that the Emperor of *Ruſſia* ſhould puſh his conqueſts no further, with the other reaſons above-mentioned, ſatisfied the *Turks*; their great concern being for that part of *Georgia* poſſeſſed by them. The prime Viſier acquainted the miniſter of *Ruſſia*, that the Sultan was ſatisfied with what he had done, provided he ſtopt there, and made no further conqueſts in *Perſia*. The *Turks* ſatisfied again.

But during theſe tranſactions, the inhabitants of *Ghilan*, a *Perſian* province bordering with *Schirvan* and the *Caſpian* ſea, had implored the Emperor's protection, and ſubmitted to the *Ruſſians*, on account of the cruelties committed by *Miriweys*, who had entirely ruined their country, and burnt and deſtroyed their proviſions, that the *Ruſſians* might not find whereupon to ſubſiſt, in marching through their country. This had almoſt undone all: the neighbouring Baſſas were ſo alarmed, that they ſignified to the *Porte*, if ſpeedy meaſures were not taken, the *Ruſſians* would make themſelves maſters of all *Georgia*. But at the ſame time, an Ambaſſador arrived at *Conſtantinople* from the almoſt dethroned Schah, imploring aſſiſtance againſt the uſurper *Miriweys*; and offering Again alarmed and ſatisfied.

BOOK XV.

offering the *Turks* advantageous conditions, which they readily gave ear to, and turned the preparations they had made againſt the *Ruſſians* (the occaſion being ſo favourable) towards *Perſia*, in hopes of recovering all the *Turks* had formerly poſſeſſed on the other ſide the *Euphrates*.

New malverſations in *Ruſſia*.

Amidſt theſe difficulties, in eviting a rupture with the *Turks*, the Czar's penetrating eye had diſcovered, that during his abſence, ſeveral abuſes had been committed by many of the principal perſons intruſted by him; and moſt of them were fined in large ſums. In former times, the Czars were kept in ignorance of all that paſſed, both at home and abroad; all matters being intruſted to the prime miniſter, who commonly inriched himſelf by bribes; which put a ſtop to all purſuits, and occaſioned the proverb, 'It's 'high to GOD, and far to the Czar.' But this Prince, who was Czar, prime miniſter, and every thing in his own perſon, looked ſo narrowly into matters, that few or none eſcaped. Amongſt others, on this occaſion, the Vice-chancellor *Shafferoff*, (one of the men in the whole empire, who had done the Czar the moſt effectual ſervice, and beſides was a great favourite) did not eſcape being brought to a trial, and puniſhed after an exemplary manner. This eminent perſon was accuſed on the five following points:

points: *Firſt*, That he had given to his brother a character and appointments unknown to the Emperor and ſenate. *Secondly*, That he had ſigned ſome orders without having regiſtered them, alſo unknown to the ſenate. *Thirdly*, That being Intendant-general of the poſt-office, he had of his own ſingle authority raiſed the price of letters, and put the money in his own coffers. *Fourthly*, That he had concealed of Prince *Gagarin*'s effects, to the value of two hundred thouſand ducats in ſpecie, and ſeventy thouſand in jewels and plate, (this Prince's ſon had been married to the Vice-chancellor's daughter); and *Laſtly*, That he had given injurious language to ſeveral of the ſenators in full ſenate, which was prohibited on pain of death. He was put to the torture, and on confeſſion was condemned to loſe his head: but being carried to the place of execution, and the executioner ready to give the blow, a herald by his majeſty's appointment, called out, pardon for life by the command of his imperial majeſty. The ſenate being then aſſembled, the Emperor, in conſideration of the ſervices this able miniſter had done him, cauſed alter the ſentence from death to perpetual baniſhment in *Siberia*, with degradation of all honours, and confiſcation of eſtate and effects.

The

BOOK XV.

A new expedition designed into *Persia*.

The Emperor after having given his orders to march the neceſſary troops, with artillery, ammunition and proviſions to *Aſtracan*, for the enſuing campaign in *Perſia*, took journey for St. *Petersburgh* in the beginning of *March* (1723) together with the Empreſs and all the court; where they arrived about the 11th.

End of the Fifteenth Book.

THE

THE HISTORY OF *PETER* the *GREAT*, EMPEROR of *RUSSIA*.

BOOK XVI.

THE Czar, on his arrival at St. *Peters-burgh*, cauſed with all expedition rigg out a great fleet of ſhips and gallies, as was given out, to exerciſe the ſeamen; but it was believed he had ſome greater deſign in view: he had not all the reaſon in the world to be content with the court of *Denmark*; which had not only made a ſeparate peace with *Sweden*, but entered into an alliance with other courts, which he thought did not favour his intereſt. Beſides, he had two demands upon that court, *viz.* the reſtitution of the countries taken from the Duke of *Holſtein*, and a free paſſage to the *Ruſſian* veſſels through the *Sound*. For, he alledged the dominion of theſe ſeas belonged to him, as having the ſtrongeſt naval force of all the

BOOK XVI.

Conjectures about the Czar's armament, 1723.

BOOK XVI.

powers bordering on the *Baltick*, nay, tho' they were all joined together.

Diſpoſes of his uſeleſs ſhips.

His imperial majeſty, on the review he made of all his ſhips, having found a great many good veſſels that were of no uſe to him, reſolved to diſtribute them amongſt the towns of St. *Petersburgh*, *Riga*, *Revel*, *Pernaw* and *Wiburg*, for encouragement of commerce. He ordered twelve men to each veſſel, eight maintained by himſelf, and the other four only by the towns; that if any of theſe ſhips were loſt, or when rendered uſeleſs by time, the towns ſhould make them up; that the number might always be continued.

The Duke of *Holſtein*'s views in *Sweden*.

The ſtates of *Sweden* being then aſſembled to regulate the ſeveral important affairs relating to the kingdom, his imperial majeſty adviſed the Duke of *Holſtein* to ſend Mr. *Baſſewitz* to manage his intereſt there, which the *Ruſſian* miniſter had orders to ſupport; for according to the late regulations, after the death of King *Charles* XII. that Duke had no pretenſions to the ſucceſſion; the abſolute power with the hereditary right being aboliſhed: yet he flattered himſelf, that the *Swedes*, who always had regard to the blood of their kings, might prefer him to all others in caſe the throne became vacant. The next expedient was, to have recourſe to ſome round-about way,

to

to get himſelf acknowledged by the body of the nation as next in blood to the crown: to effectuate which, he was to demand of the ſtates aſſembled, the title of Royal Highneſs. Mr. *Baſſewitz* being charged with this negotiation, found great difficulty in the beginning. Thoſe who had the chief hand in the alteration of the government, penetrated quickly into his deſign; ſo that the ſecret committee, to whom the memorial preſented by Mr. *Baſſewitz* on this ſubject had been remitted, after long conſideration, at laſt, in the end of *June*, made report to the upper-houſe, concluding in the negative; which was by ſome of them approved of; and they propoſed to remit the affair to the deciſion of the King and ſenate. But this by the generality was oppoſed, and the deliberation put off only to the next day, when the houſe received a meſſage from the King and Queen, ſignifying their ſurprize at their heſitating to reject the memorial preſented by the miniſter of *Holſtein*: upon which, the houſe thought fit to demand that the ſenate might concur, who the day following repaired to the ſaid houſe; where after mature deliberation, they agreed to give the title of Emperor to the monarch of *Ruſſia*, and that of Royal Highneſs to the Duke of *Holſtein*, ſeeing it could be of no prejudice to their majeſties, but

BOOK XVI.

Gets the title of Royal Highneſs, and the Czar that of Emperor.

BOOK XVI.

but ſeemed rather to contribute to the ſecurity of the kingdom; which reſolution being communicated to their majeſties by all the orders of the ſtates, they even thought fit to conſent thereto.

The Czar being informed of the ſucceſs of this negotiation, particularly with regard to the Duke, for whom he deſigned the imperial Princeſs his daughter, was highly pleaſed, and being now acknowledged Emperor by the kings of *Sweden* and *Pruſſia*, &c. He ſuppoſed the King of *Denmark* could no longer refuſe him that title; ſo that he ordered his miniſter at *Copenhagen* to renew his inſtances on the three following articles.

The demands on *Denmark*.

Firſt, That the King of *Denmark* ſhould ackowledge him as Emperor. *Secondly*, That the *Ruſſian* veſſels ſhould paſs the *Sound* free of duty. *Thirdly*, That his *Daniſh* majeſty, ſhould re-eſtabliſh the Duke of *Holſtein* in the poſſeſſion of his ſtates, and reſtore to him the fortreſs of *Tuningen*, in the condition it was actually in, when the *Danes* got poſſeſſion thereof.

That King arms for his defence.

His Imperial majeſty, to ſupport theſe demands, ordered the High-admiral to get with all expedition the fleet ready; ſo that the King of *Denmark* expecting to be attacked, eſpecially on hearing the Emperor was to command in perſon, cauſed immediately

immediately get his fleet and land forces ready, in order to make the beſt defence he could. The Czar indeed intended no further thereby than to oblige the King to be at triple the charge yearly, above what the Duke of *Holſtein*'s dominions yielded him; and if this great Prince had lived ſome time longer, the King of *Denmark*, to prevent the ruin of his dominions, muſt have at laſt ſuccumbed. But it pleaſed GOD to diſpoſe of matters otherways. BOOK XVI.

The *Ruſſian* Emperor ordered his fleet to ſail for *Revel*, where he embarked, in preſence of all the court and foreign miniſters. This fleet conſiſted of twenty ſhips of the line, and fourty gallies. He did not continue above ſix days at ſea, having done all he intended, but returned to St. *Petersburgh* againſt the 8th of *Auguſt*, where he invited all the foreign miniſters, and people of note, to witneſs a ſolemnity he intended at *Petershoff*, a houſe of pleaſure his majeſty had cauſed build ſome time ago. The Czar embarks at *Revel*.

This Prince having from his younger years taken more pleaſure in converſing with foreigners than his own countrymen, and having been informed of the *Dutch* and *Engliſh* ſhips of war, wanted above all things to ſee one of them (tho' but in miniature) with guns rigging and every thing elſe; which he got done by ſome *Engliſh* carpenters to perfection.

BOOK XVI.

perfection. The young Prince uſed often to divert himſelf with his diminutive man of war on the lake of *Pereſlaw*; by which he got ſome notion of ſhipping, and ſhewed a mighty paſſion for it, which ſtill encreaſed, till at laſt he got ſeveral ſhip-carpenters from *England*, *Holland*, and *Venice*. Before his firſt expedition againſt *Aſſoph*, he had ſeveral ſhips and gallies, built at *Veronitz*, which not a little amazed the *Ruſſians*, who never had ſeen ſhipping of any kind, except ſome *Engliſh* and *Dutch* merchant ſhips that frequented *Archangel*. His firſt travels into foreign conntries, were in *Holland*: at *Swardam* he wrought with his own hands, and became very expert. What he had obſerved at *London* and *Spithead*, and all he had done ſince as to ſhipping, he ſaid was owing to that ſmall veſſel; which therefore he cauſed bring with great ſolemnity to St. *Petersburgh*; where after much feaſting, and rejoicing, he ordered it to be put into a caſemate, giving it the name of the little grandfather, that future ages might know the riſe of the mighty fleets, of all kinds, that are this day to be ſeen in *Ruſſia*.

The ſolemnity about the little ſhip.

About this time an Ambaſſador plenipotentiary arrived at St. *Petersburgh* from the King of *Perſia*, who was received in great ſtate. After he had been admitted to his firſt audience

An Ambaſſador from *Perſia*.

audience, and delivered the Schah's letter, the Emperor aſked him how the King did? The Ambaſſador in tears replied, he believed he was dead, his commiſſion having been confirmed by the young Schah *Tahmas*. After which the great Chancellor Count *Golofkin*, told him thathis imperial majeſty's miniſters ſhould procure him a return to the letter he had preſented, and that he ſhould immediately be regaled at the Emperor's table. The Ambaſſador retired, and was conducted with the ſame ceremony as when he was admitted to audience. Then he was entertained at the Emperor's table, by Count *Apraxin*, who did the honours. BOOK XVI.

The Czar gets the news of the ſurrender of *Baku*.

Some time after, as his imperial majeſty was diverting himſelf at a ball, to which the Ambaſſador was invited, he received the agreeable accounts of the ſurrender of *Baku*, one of the moſt important places on the *Caſpian* ſea, for its ſituation, ſtrength and commerce. Major-general *Matuſkin* having ſailed from *Aſtracan* with ninety veſſels, and betwixt five and ſix thouſand men; and arriving on the 28th of *July* before that town, ſent a Major to the Governor with the following letter.

'Tho' the inhabitants of *Baku* after having promiſed to ſubmit to his imperial majeſty, had afterwards ſhewed their averſion to accept of his powerful protection, and

'the

BOOK XVI.

'the ſuccours he had offered them; never-
'theleſs his majeſty the Emperor, in conſi-
'deration of the antient and conſtant friend-
'ſhip ſubſiſting betwixt him and the Schah
'of *Perſia*, and out of compaſſion to the
'inhabitants of *Baku*, has been pleaſed to
'ſend me not only with troops and ammu-
'nition for their defence, but alſo with
'proviſions for their ſupport; ſo that they
'ought not to reject this ſpecial favour, if
'they have a mind to be regarded as faith-
'ful ſubjects to their ſovereign, and true
'patriots; but on the contrary, to repair
'their fault by a ſpeedy ſubmiſſion to his
'imperial majeſty.'

The Major-general cauſed, at the ſame time, deliver the Governor a letter he had received from the *Perſian* Ambaſſador, as he paſſed through *Aſtracan* towards St. *Petersburgh*, deſiring him to ſubmit to the protection of the Emperor of *Ruſſia*. But the Governor returned anſwer by the Major, that he could not receive any *Ruſſian* troops into the place, without an expreſs order from the Schah. He alſo ſent deputies from the town, who declared the ſame to the Major-general: whereupon he acquainted the Governor and the other inhabitants, that if they continued to refuſe him admittance with his troops, he would be obliged to treat them as enemies and rebels

to

to the Schah. He ſent with the deputies an interpreter to bring him their final anſwer, who on his return, told they were not diſpoſed to receive either troops, or ammunition. Upon this, the Major-general ordered two galliots to move up nearer, in order to bombard the place, whilſt he with the troops attacked them by land. They held out till the 7th of *Auguſt*, when General *Matuſkin* having every thing diſpoſed for an aſſault, ſummoned the Governor to ſurrender within the ſpace of four hours. The Governor demanded four days; which not obtaining, he ſent and acquainted the General, that he was willing to treat with him. The 8th by five o'clock in the morning, he ſent ſeven of the principal perſons of the town, deſiring Major-general *Matuſkin* to march into the place with his troops when he pleaſed. He made an apology for not receiving him ſooner; which he ſaid was owing to ſome vile intentioned people, for which he begged his majeſty's pardon. The Major-general having promiſed pardon, marched into the town in the afternoon, the people ſhewing all the marks of joy imaginable.

A treaty concluded between the Czar and the Schah.

The *Perſian* Ambaſſador and plenipotentiary concluded with the Emperor of *Ruſſia* an offenſive and defenſive alliance, whereby he yielded for ever to his imperial maje-

BOOK XVI.

sty, the towns of *Derbent* and *Baku*, with all depending thereon; as also the provinces of *Ghilan*, *Mazanderan* and *Asterabat*. On the other side, the Emperor obliged himself to assist the Schah with a powerful army, and never to abandon him till he brought the usurper and his rebellious subjects to submit, and restore peace to *Persia*. There was to be a free intercourse of trade betwixt the *Russian* empire and the kingdom of *Persia*.

This treaty was signed by Count *Gabriel Golofkin* Great-chancellor, *Andrew Osterman* privy-counsellor, and *Basil Stepanoff* Counsellor of the chancery, for the Emperor of *Russia*; and by *Ishmael Begh* Great-ambassador and plenipotentiary for the King of *Persia*.

After the signing the treaty, the *Persian* Ambassador wanted to take his audience of leave, and return to his master; but the Emperor invited him to stay some time longer, and partake of the diversions of the season. He carried the Ambassador to all the parties of pleasure; likeways to see the ships, the arsenals, magazines and country seats. He could not be prevailed with to stay longer than to the end of the month; and on the 25th he took his last audience in the same manner he made his public entry: he approached the imperial throne, and kissed

kiſſed his majeſty's hand. The Emperor gave the letter for the Schah to the Great-chancellor, who delivered it to the Ambaſſador, charging him from his imperial majeſty, to aſſure the Schah his maſter of his perfect friendſhip, and of his fixed reſolution to obſerve the treaty concluded betwixt them; whereupon the Ambaſſador, having received more than ordinary preſents, retired perfectly ſatisfied. Before he retired, he made a ſhort diſcourſe in praiſe of his imperial majeſty, exalting him far above *Darius* and *Alexander* the Great; with other compliments after the *Eaſtern* manner.

The *Porte* was ſoon informed of the concluſion and contents of this treaty; whereat they took umbrage, ſaying, it was indirectly declaring war againſt them; that the Emperor of *Ruſia* could by this means make great and eaſy conqueſts in *Perſia*; which the *Porte* would be obliged to prevent. The Viſier having told ſo much to Mr. *Nepliceff*, the Emperor's miniſter at *Conſtantinople*, he, together with Mr. *de Bonac* the *French* Ambaſſador, without loſs of time, acquainted the Czar with the reſolutions of the Divan, who ſeemed to be on the point of declaring war againſt *Ruſſia*. Theſe accounts his majeſty no ſooner got, than he ſent a copy of the treaty betwixt him and the young Schah to his miniſter at the *Porte*,

The *Turks* jealous of this treaty.

BOOK XVI.

with orders to communicate the ſame to the prime Viſier, and to invite at the ſame time the Sultan to accede to the treaty, aſſuring his ſublime highneſs, that he was reſolved to obſerve religiouſly the laſt treaty with the *Porte*, and had no other views than to aſſiſt with all his power, a monarch inſulted and perſecuted by his unnatural and rebellious ſubjects, who had joined an odious uſurper againſt their rightful and undoubted ſovereign. To this, the peaceful Viſier gave all attention, and laid before the Sultan the Emperor of *Ruſſia*'s good intentions towards the Schah; an inſtance whereof, was the inviting his highneſs to ſhare in the honour of getting juſtice done that oppreſſed Prince. The Marquis *de Bonac* contributed likeways not a little, by giving the Viſier the true character of the uſurper *Miriweys*; ſo that the Sultan being rightly informed, by the advice of the Divan, named plenipotentiaries to treat on the affairs of *Perſia* with his imperial majeſty; and at laſt, they came to agree on the following articles.

Are pacified, and enter into an alliance againſt the uſurper.

I. That the young Schah ſhould ſend a ſolemn embaſſy to the *Porte*. not only deſiring the Grand Seignior's aſſiſtance, but alſo that he would allow of, and agree to the treaty lately concluded betwixt the Emperor of *Ruſſia* and the Schah; wherein, if any

any article was found contrary to the ho- BOOK
nour and intereſt of the *Porte*, it ſhould be XVI.
declared null, or rectified.

II. That the *Porte* ſhould allow the Emperor of *Ruſſia* to poſſeſs all the countries along the coaſt of the *Caſpian* ſea, from mount *Caucaſus* to the river *Oſſa*, viz. *Derbent*, *Baku*, *Ghilan*, *Ran*, *Maſcan* and *Derabat*.

III. That *Ruſſia* ſhould be ſatisfied with the ſouthern coaſt, from *Ghilan* to *Oſſa*.

IV. That a ſufficient diſtrict ſhould be allowed to *Derbent*.

V. That the limits of the two empires ſhould be fixed betwixt *Scamachia* and *Baku*.

VI. That the *Porte* ſhould be allowed the provinces of *Erivan*, *Tauris* and *Caſbin*, as far as the old confines of *Turky*, from *Wan* to *Argura*.

VII. As to what concerns the other countries which the *Turks* pretend to, all means ſhall be uſed to ſatisfy them, provided the *Ruſſians* are favoured in regard to commerce.

This treaty, together with the former concluded betwixt the Emperor of *Ruſſia* and the Schah, ſecured to the empire theſe valuable conqueſts on the *Caſpian* ſea.

During theſe conferences, the *Turkiſh* plenipotentiaries made an objection, that it could not be imagined the *Turks* ſhould join with Chriſtians to ſhed *Mahomedan* blood:

BOOK XVI.

blood: the *Ruſſian* plenipotentiaries replied, that beſides the juſtice of the thing, it was the true means to prevent the ſhedding *Mahomedan* blood, by reſtoring peace to *Perſia*; and that religion ſhould not be in the queſtion, which was commonly made uſe of to cloak all uſurpations.

An objection anſwered.

About this time the *Hettman* of the *Ukraine Coſſacks* dying, they ſent ſome of their colonels demanding, beſides redreſs of ſeveral grievances, that the Emperor would be pleaſed to appoint them a new *Hettman*. But inſiſting on their grievances, they alledged that their privileges in ſeveral articles had been infringed, and argued with too much heat; which made the Emperor (who would not receive the law from his vaſſals) order to put them under arreſt. But having ſome time after, appointed Prince *Galitzen*, *Hettman* of the *Coſſacks*, the Prince procured the enlargement of the colonels, to ſatisfy them that he was to enter on his office with mildneſs.

Prince *Galitzen* made *Hettman* of the *Ukraine Coſſacks*.

His imperial majeſty having by his prudent and wiſe management, eſtabliſhed order and tranquility over the whole empire, deſigned to put in execution a project he had formed ſome time before; which was to cauſe the Empreſs *Katharine*, his ſpouſe, be ſolemnly crowned, and iſſued out his orders to that effect. But at the time he deſigned

The Czar gives orders for the Empreſs's coronation.

deſigned this ceremony, his majeſty fell ill at St. *Petersburgh* of a trouble in his ſtomach; which obliged him to keep his room for two weeks, and conſequently defer his journey to *Moſcow*, till he ſhould recover his health.

Falls ill.

Even during his illneſs, he never allowed himſelf to be one moment without doing ſomething for the good of his country: he eſtabliſhed a new academy of ſciences, compoſed of twelve members, a ſecretary, a library-keeper, and twelve ſtudents. The ſciences to be cultivated in this academy, were to be divided in three claſſes; the firſt for mathematicks; the ſecond for natural philoſophy; the third for the *Belles Lettres*.

Eſtabliſhes a new academy.

His Czariſh majeſty having recovered his health, cauſed acquaint all the foreign miniſters to appear at court; where being aſſembled, he ſpoke to them as follows.

Makes a ſpeech to the foreign miniſters.

'You know gentlemen, that ſome time 'ago, I deſigned to have gone with the 'Empreſs *Katharine* my ſpouſe to *Moſcow*; 'but GOD having ordered otherways, by 'my indiſpoſition, it has hitherto retarded 'my journey; but being now by GOD's 'permiſſion, in condition to undertake it, 'I do not doubt but you have received or-'ders to accompany us to *Moſcow*; and in 'the mean time, if you have any commiſſion 'to execute, you may apply to my Great-'chancellor. Moreover, I deſire you will

'aſſure

BOOK XVI.

'assure your auguſt maſters of my ſincere 'friendſhip, and that it ſhall never fail on 'my ſide: orders are given for all things 'neceſſary to make your journey eaſy, both 'for yourſelves and your domeſtics.'

As his imperial majeſty was on his journey, he received from his miniſter at *Stockholm* the agreeable accounts of a new treaty of alliance, confirming that of *Nieſtadt*, and clearing up ſeveral points concerning the limits and commerce; and aſcertaining the titles and rig ts of the Duke of *Holſtein*. This treaty was indeed ſigned the day his majeſty arrived at *Olonitz*; where he went to drink the waters at *Petersbroon*, on his journey to *Moſcow*. He arrived there the 1ſt of *April* 1724, and had the pleaſure to receive the inſtrument of the treaty concluded betwixt him and the Sultan, relating to the affairs of *Perſia*; which was preſented him by a *Turkiſh* Aga, and the Marquis of *Bonac*'s nephew, who had arrived two days before, and whither the Cham of the *Calmucks* had ſent an Ambaſſador; in whoſe retinue were ſome *Tartars* belonging to *Miriweys* in diſguiſe, and unknown to the Ambaſſador. Theſe being diſcovered, were put to the torture, and confeſſed they had a deſign againſt the Czar's life, for which they were broke upon the wheel.

Gets agreeable news on his journey, 1724.

A deſign diſcovered againſt his life.

All

The Empreſs's coronation.

All things being prepared for the Empreſs's coronation which was fixed for the 18th of *May*, it was performed with as great magnificence and ſtate, as if ſhe had been daughter to the firſt monarch upon earth, in preſence of all the foreign miniſters, all the eccleſiaſtics, ſenators, and chief perſons of the empire. And ſeeing there has been ſuch honourable mention made of her, it will not be improper here to give ſome account of her life.

A ſhort account of her.

The Empreſs *Katharine* was born and brought up in *Eſthonia*, of mean parents. When ſhe had attained the fifteenth year of her age, ſhe entered into a *Lutheran* miniſter's ſervice, whoſe name was *Gluck*, with whom ſhe continued to the age of twenty-two, or thereabout, when ſhe was married to a *Swediſh* corporal; ſhe was luckily taken and carried off by the *Ruſſians*, amongſt other priſoners, on the day of her marriage, at a country place near *Derpt;* her bridegroom being killed in the encounter, as was ſuppoſed, (for from that time he was never heard of) ſhe was carried to Marſhal *Sheremetoff*, in her wedding cloaths. The Marſhal ſeeing her a freſh blooming young woman, that ſhe might not fall into bad hands, ſent her to Colonel *Balk*'s lady, who was of *Livonian* extraction, with whom ſhe continued until Prince *Menzekoff* happen-

BOOK XVI.

ing to see her, would needs carry her to the Princess his lady. The Czar, being frequently with his favourite, soon saw her, and took immediately such a liking to her, that he ordered her to be sent to his sister, the Princess *Natalia*, where his acquaintance with her commenced. She was called *Katharina Vasilewna:* but as she became of the *Greek* church, her name was changed to *Alexowna*, the Czarowich *Alexis* standing godfather to her at the font: the *Greek* church admitting none into her communion of the reformed religion, but who must be baptized a new. She had several children to the Czar before he married her, particularly the Princess *Anna*, who was married to the Duke of *Holstein*. The Czar was married to her in the year 1710. She was a very pretty well lookt woman of good sense but not of that sublimity of wit, or rather that quickness of imagination which some people have believed. The great reason why the Czar was so fond of her, was her exceeding good temper; she never was seen peevish or out of humour; obliging and civil to all, and never forgetful of her former condition; withall, mighty grateful. The *Lutheran* priest with whom she had lived the most of her time, being with his whole family carried into *Russia*, she took care to bestow on them singular favours,

and

and to make their condition eaſier than ever it had been before; but ſtill with the Czar's knowledge and approbation. The treaty of *Pruth* put her out of the reach of envy itſelf; ſhe became the idol of the people, particularly of the army. The Czar himſelf in the proclamation for her coronation, after acknowledging her fidelity and tender affection, owns alſo the aid he had received from her council and advice upon many occaſions, beſides that of *Pruth*. He never allienated his affection from her, but ſo far on the contrary, that a little before his death he left her (in that event) as much ſovereign of the empire, as he had been himſelf, and which ſhe enjoyed undiſturbed about two years after his death. When the army heard that the Emperor was dead, they very much regreted him (and good reaſon they had, for he always took ſpecial care of them) but ſaid, 'well, ſince our father 'is gone, bleſſed be GOD our mother is 'ſtill alive.' She was of a good healthy conſtitution and died ſuddenly; which gave moſt people occaſion to believe ſhe was carried off by poiſon. BOOK XVI.

The Czar makes great preparations to aſſiſt the Schah,

The Emperor after the great ſolemnity of the coronation was over, and having ordered twenty four thouſand of his beſt troops, beſides *Coſſacks* and *Tartars*, which might amount to ſixty thouſand more, to-

BOOK XVI. gether with artillery ammunition and provisions, and shipping for transporting them from *Astracan*, under the command of Prince *Galitzen*, in order to assist powerfully the Schah; left *Muscow* with the whole court, and returned to St. *Petersburgh*, where he made several promotions both in his armies and fleets. The rest of the year he employed himself after his ordinary manner, in promoting trade and navigation, and every thing else that could contribute to the advantage of his country.

The revenues of the clergy abridged.

He had some time before regulated the benefices of the clergy, from the patriarch down to the parish priest: also the convents, what their numbers should be, allowing what was sufficient to all, but no superfluity; so that full two thirds of the church revenues went into his treasury, and all persons seemingly satisfied.

He also established this year a regular packet-boat betwixt St. *Petersburgh* and *Lubeck*, for the benefit of commerce and travellers.

Scarce were the pompous rejoicings over for the coronation of the Empress, and betrothing of the young Princess to the Duke of *Holstein*, when the Czar was seized with the distemper of which he died. He spent the *Christmas* holidays very chearfully, and had no complaint till the day of the

the THREE KINGS; when aſſiſting at the ceremony of BLESSING the WATER, the weather being exceſſive violent, he catched a ſevere cold, which with a violent ſtrangury and retention of urine, occaſioned by an impoſthume in the bladder, put an end to his life on the 28th of *January* 1725. The phyſicians made uſe of a probe, but too late: it gave indeed ſome eaſe for a while, by bringing much of the matter away, but his pain ſoon became again exceſſive, and he ſuffered torture equal to the rack four days more; yet in all his diſtreſs he ſhewed great ſigns of the hero, with a good deal of the Chriſtian: and it argued a very great concern for his people, that when at the worſt, he gave orders for ſhortening law proceſſes. Some days before his death, finding his end approaching, he called the ſenate, the counſellors, and the other ſtates of the nation together, where he declared the Empreſs *Katharine* his ſucceſſor in the empire.

The Czar catches a ſevere cold, which was the occaſion of his death.

Names his ſucceſſor.

Thus died *Peter* I. Emperor of *Ruſſia*, who certainly deſerved the epithet GREAT, as much as any Prince ever did. When we conſider the method he took to reform his empire, his drawing the natives by degrees into a taſte of military affairs, beginning himſelf at the loweſt degree, to ſhew example to others; his travelling into foreign countries

His character.

BOOK XVI.

countries to obſerve the cuſtoms and manners of the inhabitants; his raiſing, diſciplining and ſupporting ſuch great armies and fleets; his introducing learning, manufactories and handycrafts of all kinds; with the great length he brought commerce and navigation, things before altogether unknown to that people; the prudent meaſures he took to weaken and reduce his enemies: in ſhort, the reforming his country in every particular, as well the eccleſiaſtic ſtate as the civil, is ſo extraordinary, that I do not believe ſince the creation of the world, ever monarch was at ſo great pains or did the like; and all within the ſpace of thirty years. The great fatigue he underwent, together with his other exceſſes, ſhortened his days, having only lived to the age of about fifty three years. He was ſevere rather than cruel, never pardoned a malefactor, except thoſe of his own blood, Prince *Baſil Galitzen*, as is already ſaid, and ſome few of his greateſt favourites. He looked upon ſome things as crimes, which in other countries are not puniſhed with that ſeverity they deſerve; ſuch as concuſſion and taking of bribes, which he could not endure. The taking great men ſometimes to taſk, tho' not capitally, for ſuch miſdemeanours, particularly his favourite Prince *Menzekoff*, was done (as ſome ſaid) with a view

to

to excuſe the more rigorous puniſhment of inferior criminals; according to the *German* proverb, 'The ſmall thieves are hanged, 'but the great ones are allowed to eſcape.' His leaving the empire to that once mean woman, the Empreſs *Katharine*, was a ſurprize not only to *Ruſſia*, but the whole world: yet conſidering the great affection and eſteem he always had for her, his confidence in her prudence and juſtice, and the many eminent ſervices ſhe had done him, it was the moſt prudent ſtep he could take, and nothing leſs than what he ought to have done; for if he had left the empire to his grandſon Prince *Peter*, who ſucceeded her, ſhe and her children had been ſent to *Siberia*, or ſome worſe place, where ſhe would have ended her days in miſery: the leaving her in poſſeſſion of the whole, was the only means to make her ſafe*.

Amongſt

* I believe further, that Czar *Peter* thought *Katharine* would ſupport his regulations (which ſhe knew too better than any body) more than a ſtranger. A ſtranger alſo of his own ſubjects he had none of ſufficient authority to quaſh cabals, factions and emulations; whereas ſhe was of authority, by the applications in buſineſs the Czar had allowed to be made to her in his own time. Perhaps too, a ſtranger might have taken it in his head to have removed the crown totally from the Czar's race, and eſtabliſhed it in his own; but ſhe had no race, but what was the Czar's alſo: ſo that in effect, this eſtabliſhment was but a mere interim, and being fortified with title and dignity, ſerved for the better conſervation of things, without doing injury to any, more than a ſimple regency could have done.

BOOK XVI.

Amongſt other inſtances of *Peter* the Great's talents, the method he took to inſpire his ſubjects with a military genius, without uſing force, was curious. Knowing the averſion the nation generally had to war, to ſhew them good example, he entered himſelf into the meaneſt ſtations of it; beat the drum, carried arms, became corporal, ſerjeant, and ſo on; and juſt ſo in the navy: which the young nobility no ſooner perceived, than they came in great numbers, deſiring to be admitted into the ſervice, and according to their behaviour were advanced. Prince *Galitzen*, Prince *Dolgoruky*, with many more of the firſt families, carried a muſket, and paſſed through all the degrees, till they advanced to conſiderable commands. Before this time, it was thought diſhonourable to bear any command under that of Colonel; and theſe were only of the ſecond rank of gentry: the prime quality would accept of no command under that of a General: 'For (ſaid 'they), why ſhould we ſerve and expoſe ourſelves?

As for a ſtranger without his dominions, he had no choice but the Duke of *Holſtein*, who abſtracted from *Katharine* was of no weight; and could not have anſwered to govern, but might be of uſe if thrown into the ſcale with her, which the making her ſovereign did, by the attraction of him, thro' the alliance of her daughter whom he had married: ſo that all things conſidered, this was perhaps the wiſeſt thing the Czar ever did.

'ourſelves? We can find ſtrangers for our 'money, who are good enough for ſuch 'mean employments.' BOOK XVI.

But what contributed moſt, next to the Emperor's own example, was, that a Prince, or one of the greateſt quality of the nation, was to have no rank but by his poſt: a Captain raiſed from obſcurity had the precedence of a Prince that was inferior to him in command, not only upon duty, but on all other occaſions; which introduced emulation to that degree, that every one was at pains to outdo another.

The method this wiſe Prince took to raiſe and keep up a ſtanding army became eaſy, both to himſelf and to the country: it was after the following manner. Firſt, he conſidered the extent of his dominions, and how the different countries were peopled; he cauſed take an exact account of all the families within each province, both in town and country; and after having conſidered their numbers, he obliged each province, according to its ſtrength, to furniſh two or three regiments, but for the moſt part two, one of foot, and one of dragoons, which they were to keep up in all time coming; and not only to furniſh men but horſes; ſo that the officers are at no trouble about recruiting. No ſooner do the troops retire into their winter quarters, than the colonels

The method the Czar took to keep up his army.

BOOK XVI.

ſend to the provinces an account of what recruits the regiments will want, which are duly ſent them againſt the ſpring. The Emperor has large eſtates over this vaſt empire, belonging in property to himſelf, which are not exempted from theſe contributions and payments; and at the ſame time, the people are the leaſt oppreſſed, it being a part of the Governor's duty to raiſe and be anſwerable for the ſubſidies, who muſt take care to diſtribute juſtice equally.

The children of the boors (the boys at the age of ſixteen, and the girls at twelve, or at moſt thirteen) are commonly forced to marry, in order to increaſe the revenue, and then they get tenements and lands of their own, for which they pay nothing the firſt two years, but thereafter are obliged to do as others. Their houſes both in town and country are built of timber, whereof there is plenty every where. Their villages and towns near the frontiers have a kind of a fortification ſufficient to keep off a body of *Tartars*, who are always on horſeback.

This great Emperor came in a few years to know to a farthing the amount to all his revenues; as alſo how they were laid out. He was at little or no expence about his perſon, and by living rather like a private gentleman then a Prince; he ſaved wholly that great expence which other monarchs are at,

at, in ſupporting the grandeur of their courts. It was uneaſy for him to appear in majeſty, which he ſeldom or never did but when abſolutely neceſſary, on ſuch occaſions as giving audience to ambaſſadors, or the like; ſo that he had all the pleaſure of a great Emperor, and at the ſame time that of a private gentleman. BOOK XVI.

He was a lover of company, and a man of much humour and * pleaſantry, exceeding facetious and of vaſt natural parts. He had no letters, he could only read and write, but had a great regard for learning, and was at much pains to introduce it into the country. He roſe early: the morning he gave to buſineſs, till ten or eleven o'clock at fartheſt; all the reſt of the day, and a great part of the night to diverſion and pleaſure. He took his bottle heartily, ſo muſt all the company; for when he was merry himſelf, he loved to ſee every body ſo; tho' at the ſame time he could not endure habitual drinkers, for ſuch he thought unfit for buſineſs.

When he payed a viſit to a friend, he would paſs almoſt the whole night, not caring to part with good company till paſt two

* Indeed the marriage of the *Dwarfs* and others of that kind were too low for Czar *Peter:* it has perhaps been to comply with the taſte of others; but it muſt in ſome meaſure have fallen in with his own.

BOOK XVI.

o'clock in the morning. He never kept guards about his perſon, nor was accompanied by above five or ſix perſons at moſt.

He was a Prince rather parſimonious than liberal, but knew very well how to time his favours, and to beſtow them with a good grace. He never could abide ceremony, but loved to be ſpoke to frankly and without reſerve. He never refuſed any perſon's invitation, he had an eſteem for, only they muſt deſire him to name his own time, leſt he might have been pre-engaged.

When King *Auguſtus* and the Czar met, they did buſineſs in the morning; and in the afternoon minded their diverſions, the King delighting much in company of the ladies, and his bottle; which he could bear very well: the Czar went often into his frolicks, as much out of complaiſance and good nature as inclination. He was generally fortunate in his undertakings, and in diſcovering the ſeveral plots and conſpiracies which had been from time to time formed againſt his life. To ſum up all, his fellow never ſat upon that throne; and I queſtion very much, if ever another of ſo great abilities will ſucceed him: 'tis true the moſt difficult part is over, ſo it will be no hard matter to continue things on the footing he has put them. 'Tis not to be feared that ever the *Ruſſians* will return to their old ways;

ways; the aged people are all dead, and the young ſo fond of the new, that it would be more difficult to bring them back to their old methods than it was for Czar *Peter* to take them from them.

The old people among the *Ruſſians* uſed to compare this great Prince to Czar *John Baſilowich*, commonly called the Tyrant. *John* (ſaid they), turned off his firſt Empreſs, and ſhut her up in a convent, without a juſt cauſe: ſo did *Peter*. *John* killed his eldeſt ſon: ſo did *Peter*; and with premeditate deſign, which *John* did not. *John* put infinite numbers even of his greateſt ſubjects to moſt cruel deaths: ſo did *Peter*. *John* brought a great many ſtrangers into the country, and deſigned to introduce foreign faſhions: ſo did *Peter*. *John* married ſeven wives: *Peter* had as many wives and miſtreſſes. *John* encroached upon the church, and annexed moſt of its revenues to the crown: ſo did *Peter*; who went yet further, for he aboliſhed the patriarch's office, and ſet up a mock patriarch, a married perſon called *Mickta Miſſowich Zotow*, to the great contempt of religion and ſcandal to the nation.

But let me tell theſe gentlemen, that if Czar *John* had had as good reaſon for what he did as Czar *Peter* had, they may cut off the word Tyrant from his character: for the

BOOK XVI. the commiſſion of one, or a few raſh and even cruel acts, are not ſufficient to denominate a Prince a tyrant. But by all that one can judge, *Peter* the Great was a humane Prince, whoſe general motive was the honour and good of his country; ſo that excepting his turning off the Empreſs *Eudoxia*, whoſe character was never blemiſhed; and the neglect of his eldeſt ſon's education, which was a conſequence of the former ſtep, all *Peter*'s conduct may be juſtified with no great difficulty. Indeed the number and ſeverity of the executions, (whereof that of the metropolitan, in the Czarowich's proceſs, ſeems the leaſt juſtifiable) is much to be imputed to the barbarous conſtitution of government in that country. As to the juſtice of attacking the young King of *Sweden*, that point I leave to the caſuiſts to determine; tho' the *Ruſſians* reckon that the provinces taken from *Sweden* belonged to *Ruſſia* before *.

The

* The reader may look at the different accounts given by the *Ruſſians* and *Swedes* of the reaſons for that war, in the Preſent State of *Ruſſia*, Lond. 1722. The Czar honeſtly tells he kept *Livonia* (which the *Poles* laid claim to) for his own pains, King *Auguſtus* having left him all the work to do.

The following EPITAPH on *Peter* the Great was written ſoon after his death: BOOK XVI.

Hic jacent
Reliquiæ, vix mortales,
PETRI ALEXOWITZ
Ruſſiarum *Imperatoris haud opus eſt dicere,*
Honorem enim iſti diademati addidit non recepit.
Taceat antiquitas,
Cedat ALEXANDER,
Cedat CÆSAR;
Se facilem præbet victoria
Heroum ductoribus,
Milites vinci neſcios imperantibus;
Sed ILLE,
Qui in morte ſola requieſcit
Non famæ avidos,
Non bello peritiſſimos,
Non homines mortem temnentes
Sed bruta, vixque humani nominis dignos
ſubditos invenit;
Etiam hos, compatriis urſis ſimillimos, et averſantes expolivit;
Barbaritatis hæreditariæ tenebras ille Phœbus fugavit.

Et

Et propria virtute Germanorum *victores vicit.*

Alii foliciſſime exercitus duxerunt, hic creavit.

Erubeſce ars!

Hic vir maximus tibi nihil debuit:

Exulta natura!

Hoc ſtupendium tuum eſt.

In *Engliſh* thus:

Here depoſited

Is all that could die of the immortal,

PETER ALEXOWITZ.

It is ſuperfluous to add,

MONARCH *of the Great Empire of* RUSSIA:

That crown, far from giving any luſtre to him,

Became illuſtrious by his wearing it.

Let antiquity be ſilent:

Let her boaſt no more her ALEXANDERS,

Or her CÆSARS:

It was eaſy to conquer, where every ſoldier was a hero.

But HE,

Who never knew reſt till now,

Found

Found not ſubjects ſkill'd in war,
Souls who preferred fame before life:
His people might be ſaid
More to reſemble the bears of their country than men;
Yet even theſe, untractable and barbarous as they were,
He civilized and poliſhed.
He, like the riſing Sun,
Diſpelled their hereditary darkneſs;
And by the force of his innate genius
Taught them to conquer the conquerors of Germany.
Other princes have led victorious armies:
His army he made himſelf.
Bluſh thou Art,
To ſee a hero who owed thee nothing!
Exult O nature!
This prodigy was all your own.

BOOK XVI.

Characters of ſome of the chief perſons in the court of PETER the Great.

The riſe and character of Prince Menzekoff.

PRINCE *Menzekoff* was a corporal's ſon of the *Prebraſinſky* regiment of guards, a ſmart roguiſh boy, called *Alexaſka*, or little *Alexander*. When the Czar, being alſo young, took notice of him firſt, he took ſuch a liking to the boy, that he would ſtill have him about his perſon. As he grew in years, he improved in cunning: yet ſo illiterate, that with difficulty he could ſubſcribe his name. During General *Lefort*'s time he was but little regarded; but after his death he ſoon came into favour. One obſtacle however remained, which was the Czar's miſtreſs *Anna Joanowna Mons*, an exceeding beautiful young woman, endued with all the talents to pleaſe, except prudence and good ſenſe, as by her actions will appear. This young woman after the Czar had cohabited with her for ſeveral years, (tho' no iſſue appeared) and had heaped riches upon her, and given her fine poſſeſſions, was ſo unwiſe as to diſcover a greater regard for one Mr. *Keyſerling* the *Pruſſian* envoy. This man fond of the thoughts

thoughts of rivaling ſo great a monarch as the Emperor of *Ruſſia*, after having propoſed marriage to the lady, and ſecured her affections, went with her conſent to the riſing favourite *Alexaſka* to make him their friend; who being glad of the occaſion, gave him all imaginable encouragement; telling him, he was very ſure, ſince it was her inclination, the Czar would never oppoſe it: but that before he ſpoke to his majeſty on the ſubject, he muſt have it from her own mouth, and under her hand, that ſhe inclined to marry Mr. *Keyſerling*. *Alexaſka* then ſent a favourite lady of his, one Madam *Weid*, to diſcourſe her on the ſubject; ſhe frankly owned ſhe liked Mr. *Keyſerling*, and would marry him preferable to all others, if the Czar would but agree to it. There needed no more, *Alexaſka* being informed of this, to make all ſure, went himſelf to wait on her, and receive her commands by write as well as word. BOOK XVI.

Having procured his credentials, he immediately repaired to the Czar, and in a ſly way ſaid, Now, Sir, your majeſty ever believed that your friend Mrs. *Mons* loved you beyond all mankind; What would you think if I ſhould convince you of the contrary? Enough *Alexaſka* (ſays the Czar), I am ſo fully perſuaded ſhe can love none but

BOOK XVI.

me, that nothing ſhall convince me of the contrary, unleſs ſhe tell me ſo much herſelf. Upon which, *Alexaſka* took a paper out of his pocket, which ſatisfied the Czar ſo fully, that her diſgrace may be dated from that moment. But to be yet more fully ſatisfied in the matter, the Czar went to viſit her as formerly, and told her without paſſion what *Alexaſka* had acquainted him with from her; which ſhe not denying, the Czar upbraided her with her unfaithfulneſs and folly; then ſtript her of all the lands and fine things he had preſented her with, particularly his picture ſet with diamonds, ſaying, ſhe had no more uſe for that, ſince ſhe put ſo ſmall a value on the original, in prefering to him an abject ſlave. In ſhort, he left her nothing but a good houſe, and ſome jewels he had given her from time to time. Some time after, ſhe married Mr. *Keyſerling;* but not being able to bear with her diſgrace, ſhe ſickened and died within the year.

This lady being removed, *Alexaſka* had no ſtop in his way, he became *Peter* the Great's chief favourite, ſtudied his humour, and ſtuck at nothing to pleaſe him; was his conſtant companion in all his parties of pleaſure, attended and ſerved him in all places, and at the ſame time was not unmindful of himſelf. He was covetous to the

the laſt degree: what ever he took a fancy to he muſt have; a fine ſeat, a convenient eſtate, or the like; not the greateſt man in the empire durſt refuſe him: and none ſtood their ground againſt him, except the Czar's relations the *Naritzkins*, Marſhal *Sheremetoff*, Admiral *Apraxin*, Prince *Galitzen*, and ſome more of the great families: he knew very well thoſe he durſt meddle with, and them he ſpared not. The foreign officers he never durſt attack, General *Goltz* only excepted, whoſe ruin he intended but without ſucceſs. He pillaged all *Poland*; in ſo much that the plague which conſumed multitudes of the inhabitants, did leſs prejudice to the country. He alſo raiſed vaſt ſums even amongſt the *Ruſſians*; none durſt own their having money, or if he came to the knowledge thereof, he was ſure to have the largeſt ſhare, otherways he would work their ruin. This behaviour made him odious to the whole nation, except a few perſons whom he employed of his own kidney. BOOK XVI.

Moſt people were ſurprized he ſtood his ground ſo long: certainly (ſaid they) he muſt in ſome ſhape or other, be exceeding uſeful to the Prince, or he muſt long ago have periſhed. The Czar often kicked him publickly and beat him like a dog, ſo that the by-ſtanders concluded him undone, but always

BOOK XVI.

ways next morning the peace was made up, which people believed could not proceed but from ſome preternatural cauſe. The belief of withchcraft and magical arts prevails much among the *Ruſſians*.

When the Czar went firſt into foreign countries, *Menzekoff* accompanied him, and was comonly called Prince *Alexander*; tho' he was really no Prince until the year 1706. When by the force of preſents at the court of *Vienna*, together with his being the Czar's favourite, he was by the Emperor *Joſeph*, created a prince of the empire. He was no ſoldier, nor was he ever capable of a generous action; and all he did worth notice, was, that on the defeat of the King of *Sweden* at *Pultawa*, General *Levenhaup* ſurrendered to him when he could make no better of it.

On the death of the Empreſs *Katharine*, Prince *Menzekoff* having been her Prime-councellor, and conſtantly about her, had the impudence to counterfeit a will, as if ſigned by her, wherein two particular points concerning his family (and the only material ones) were inſerted, *viz.* That the great Duke the Emperor's grand-ſon, by the Czarowich Alexis, ſhould marry none but Prince *Menzekoff*'s daughter, and that his ſon, the young Prince *Menzekoff*, ſhould marry the great Duke's ſiſter; leaving her curſe to all who

who ſhould oppoſe, or contradict the ſaid will. BOOK XVI.

This was ſo great a piece of villany, and ſo far contrary to *Peter* the Great's intentions, *viz.* That the apparent heir of the empire ſhould be married to none of his own ſubjects, but to ſome foreign Princeſs (for the ſake of alliance), that with his other barbarities and cruelties, it ſo inflamed the great men and the nation in general againſt him, that his ruin was determined. The great Duke being proclaimed Emperor, his grandmother, *Peter* the Great's firſt Empreſs was taken out of the convent, and brought to court, where ſhe had all the honours paid her due to her rank.

Yet ſtill, Prince *Menzekoff* was ſuch a terror to moſt people, that few durſt venture to attack him, till Baron *Oſterman* a foreigner, an able miniſter, in concert with ſome of the moſt forward, attempted it; laying before the young Emperor and his grandmother, how dangerous this man was in the ſtate, becauſe of his immenſe riches; they agravated the matter ſtill more with the forgery of the late Empreſs *Katharine*'s will, for every body believed it ſuch. Beſides he had been a great inſtrument in forwarding the Emperor's father the late Czarowich's ſentence; all which produced the effect, that he was forthwith confined under

BOOK XVI.

a ſtrong guard, and ſent to *Siberia* in perpetual baniſhment, at the time when he was leaſt expecting it. He ſubmitted without oppoſition, ſaying only he wiſhed to know his crime; that he was the Emperor's faithful ſervant and ſlave; with a great deal more to that purpoſe. His whole eſtate and effects were confiſcated to the crown, amounting in land, money, jewels, and plate, *&c.* to the value of eight millions ſterling which would ſeem incredible.

As he was on his way to *Siberia* he endeavoured to corrupt the guards, and make his eſcape, which he could not effectuate; ſo to *Siberia* he was carried, where he died not long after, overwhelmed with miſery and grief. This is all that can be ſaid of this man, who had been above twenty years ſole favourite of the Emperor *Peter* the Great. He was an exceeding artful fellow, of a vaſt memory, but wicked above what can be immagined.

The character of *Eudoxia Theodrowna Lapachin*, *Peter* the Great's firſt Empreſs.

EUDOXIA Theodrowna was daughter to the *Boyar Theodore Abramowich Lapachin*, one of the principal families of the empire, exceeding beautiful; The Czar and

and ſhe were married together young, neither of them above ſixteen. The four firſt years they lived in great ſympathy: but the Czar not liking to be ſhut up after the manner of his predeceſſors, delighting rather to be much abroad, and to divert himſelf moſtly amongſt foreigners, whoſe company he preferred to the natives; ſhe turned moroſe and out of humour; then thinking to reclaim him from his liberties, ſhe fell entirely into diſgrace*, ſo that he would ſee her no more: but cauſed put her into a convent, thinking to force her to become religious, that he might be at freedom to marry another: the *Greek* church allowing, that if either huſband or wife retire from the world, the party remaining may marry again. This ſhe had no mind to agree to, but told him if he would have her become a nun, he might come to the convent, and cut off her hair with his own hand, for none elſe ſhould touch her body; which he not thinking fit to comply with, ſhe continued in the cloiſter till after his death, that her grandſon mounted the throne. Then returning to court, ſhe was received with all ſuitable honour, and was

BOOK XVI.

* One cauſe of her diſgrace was ſuppoſed to be Prince *Menzekoff*'s revenge for ſome expreſſions that pointed at the lowneſs of his firſt condition: ſhe complained of his carrying her huſband among lewd women who had formerly been his cuſtomers for cakes.

BOOK XVI.

the main inſtrument of Prince *Menzekoff*'s diſgrace. Yet ſoon wearying of a court life, in a few months ſhe left it, being naturally of a retired temper, or perhaps become ſo by uſe, having lived the moſt part of her time amongſt the nuns, to whom ſhe returned, and continued with them to the end of her days.

The character of *Boris Petrowitz Sheremetoff*, firſt Marſhal of the Emperor's armies.

MARSHAL *Sheremetoff* was originally of *Pruſſia*, of a very diſtinguiſhed family, eſpecially in the wars; where they had often held the chief command, and generally with ſucceſs. He was brought up from his infancy in the army, and at length came to command the *Ruſſian* troops at *Bielogrod*, on the frontiers of *Tartary*, where he was Governor. He beat the *Tartars* often, and tho' he never had to do with any other enemy, till the war broke out againſt *Sweden*, yet he came to underſtand military affairs ſo well, that he took the towns of *Derpt*, *Notteburg*, *Nyenſchance*, beat the *Swedes* at *Staynits*, *Swiſterbeck*, &c. in *Livonia*. He was the principal commander next the Czar at the battle of *Pultawa*, after which he took *Riga*, &c. was

a

a brave old gentleman, much esteemed by the *Russian* Emperor, and generally beloved. He died aged above seventy, and was pompuously interred at St. *Petersburgh*. BOOK XVI.

The character of Marshal *Ogilvie*.

MARSHAL *Ogilvie* was of *Scots* extraction. His grand father entered into the *Austrian* service, during the reign of the Emperor *Ferdinand*, by whom for his good service he was created Baron of the empire. Our Marshal served from his youth in the imperial armies, sometimes on the *Rhine*, and sometimes in *Hungary* against the *Turks*, where he became a General-officer; and was near sixty years of age, before he entered into the *Russian* service. He commanded at the taking of *Narva*, brought off the *Russian* army with honour at *Grodno*, and introduced several points of discipline which the *Russians* were strangers to; he was much beloved by the army during his continuance in the service, which was but for three years, having made agreement for no longer time. He could never hit it with Prince *Menzekoff*, nor bear with his insolence; insomuch that he told the Czar before *Narva* was taken, that if he meddled with the orders he would have nothing to do with them: he was a prudent mild commander, and moderated

BOOK XVI. the rigour in the councils of war as to faults in the ſervice, ſaying the *Ruſſians* were but in their infancy, and ought to be brought into diſcipline by degrees. He went into King *Auguſtus*'s ſervice after he left the *Ruſſian*: died and was honourably interred at *Dreſden* in the year 1712.

The character of the High-admiral *Apraxin*.

THEODORE *Mathewitz Apraxin*, a gentleman of an antient and oppulent family in *Ruſſia*, was brought up from his youth about the court. A ſiſter of his being married to Czar *Theodore*, elder brother to the Czars *John* and *Peter*. The office and dignity of High-admiral was conferred on him in the year 1705. Tho' he had no manner of knowledge in maritime affairs, yet being a man of good ſenſe and application, he came in time to underſtand matters ſo well, and comprehend every thing that belonged to the fleet, and gave his orders ſo diſtinctly, that the Czar as well as the ſea officers were perfectly well ſatisfied with him. He was ever faithful to the Emperor; a prudent friendly honeſt man, generally eſteemed, and a mortal enemy to Prince *Menzekoff*, and none more active in his diſgrace. He was a lover of foreigners,

foreigners, and took great pleaſure in con- BOOK
verſing with them, eſpecially thoſe who un- XVI.
derſtood any thing of ſea affairs; curious to
learn, as moſt of the *Ruſſians* are.

The character of General Prince *Galitzen.*

GENERAL Prince *Michael Michaelowitz Galitzen* was of an old *Ruſſian* family originally of *Poland.* He was eſteemed by the Czar himſelf, and by all the foreign officers, the ableſt commander of all the *Ruſſians*, and had ſuch a curious turn that he got all the plans of the battles and moſt conſiderable ſieges during the laſt long war betwixt the confederates and the *French;* as alſo of thoſe betwixt the Emperor of *Germany* and the *Turks.* He was a brave and fortunate officer, was concerned in all the great actions ſuch as *Leſno*, *Pultawa*, and the *Pruth* (where the Czar commanded in perſon), beſides the conqueſts of *Finland*, &c. He was much eſteemed both by natives and foreigners. He was Lieutenant-general, and commander of the guards at the age of thirty-two, and lived univerſally beloved to a good age.

The

BOOK XVI.

The character of the Czarowich *Alexis*.

THE Czarowich *Alexis* was quite neglected in his education, and had attained to the age of fourteen before he was taken out of the hands of the women and clergy, who had already impreſſed him with ſuch bad maxims and ſentiments, creating in him ſo great an averſion to all improvements, and foreign methods, that it was ſcarcely poſſible to remove them. At laſt the Czar being ſenſible of this neglect, appointed him a Governor, one *Nygebower* a *German*, a brutal fellow who had no civility, but affronted the Prince on all occaſions, which made things worſe and increaſed his hatred to foreigners. Perhaps if his father had removed the *Ruſſians*, and placed good people about him, I mean foreigners, at the age of ten or twelve years, then ſent him abroad quite out of *Ruſſia*, where the impreſſions of his youth might have been removed, and continued him in foreign countries till he had attained to the age of twenty, this Prince might have made a compleat gentleman, for he was far from being a fool: but this method being neglected, the poor unhappy Prince was abſolutely loſt. All thoſe who frequented him flattered him

in

in his humours, (even thoſe whom his father placed about him) in hopes no doubt of gaining his favour, in the event of his coming to the throne. Mr. *Kekin*, who was otherways a fine gentleman, was the principal cauſe of his fall, by encouraging him in all his follies: he had been bred up at court by the Empreſs *Eudoxia*, whoſe hard treatment he always as far as he durſt reſented; and when he perceived the Czar intended to exclude the Czarowich from the ſucceſſion, he adviſed him at firſt to go privately into *France*; but afterwards he adviſed him to go to *Vienna*, and put himſelf under the protection of the Emperor. But if he had rightly conſidered, his firſt counſel was the beſt: for the Czarowich ſhould not have put himſelf under the protection of any Prince who had a connexion with *Ruſſia*, ſuch as the *German* Emperor particularly had, on account of the wars with the *Turks*. *France* in all probability would have been the ſafeſt retreat for the Czarowich; and his friends and adviſers by this means had been all ſafe: whereas, having recourſe to the Emperor's protection, it is generally believed he was forced to return to the Czar; as appeared by his manifeſto, (1718) tho' the Emperor was unwilling to have it thought he had refuſed his protection.

BOOK XVI. on. Accordingly he wrote the Czar a letter * complaining much of ſome expreſſions in that manifeſto. But in my humble opinion, the Emperor ſhould have refuſed to protect him from the beginning, and allowed him to retire where he had a mind, rather than after granting him protection, with aſſurance that, he would not deliver him up to his father, to force him to return †. The reſt of this unfortunate Prince's life is already narrated.

Character of the Princeſs *Natalia*.

THO' the women in this country are generally very pretty, and when they get into the uſe of company, ſoon become very polite fine ladies; yet above all, *Peter*

* This letter is to be found in the Hiſtorical Regiſter for the year 1722.

† Notwithſtanding all the greatneſs, the ſucceſſes, and amuſements of the Emperor *Peter*, this melancholy event in his own family, muſt have affected him very ſenſibly! He was by no means void of natural affection, nor could he be inſenſible of what the world might ſay on that occaſion. He had not been without his mortifications and diſturbances before: conſpiracies againſt his life: diſappointments in ſeveral of his deſigns: and one vexatious article in his love affairs, *viz.* his miſtreſs's quitting him for a *Pruſſian* envoy. Many other things may be ſuppoſed to have interrupted his pleaſures: however, he ſtill kept his great deſign ſtedfaſtly in view; the poliſhing and improving his vaſt empire in every thing; not even forgetting religion. By his order, the Archbiſhop of *Kiow* drew up a Catechiſm, which was printed in the *Ruſſian* language.

Peter the Great's full ſiſter, the Princeſs *Natalia*, was famous for her beauty and graceful behaviour. This Princeſs complied very much with her brother's humour, and was the firſt that admitted of and went into company.

This incomparable Princeſs died unmarried, aged not much above forty, univerſally regreted. She always retained her good looks and charming behaviour, and would have graced the moſt exalted throne in *Europe*.

End of the Sixteenth Book.

APPENDIX.

APPENDIX.

Deſcription of St. *Petersburgh.*

Taken from a Letter from Mr. WYLDE, *Reſident of the States General at the court of* Ruſſia.

ALL the maps, ſays Monſieur *de Wylde*, being erroneous as to the ſituation of St. *Petersburgh*, I give myſelf the honour to inform you, that the river *Neva* or *Nyè* is twelve common leagues long, or ſeventy-two werſts, according to the meaſure of theſe parts; from the iſland *Riſzard* or *Richard*, as it is commonly, tho' falſly called, in which ſtands *Cronſtat*, abuſively taken in ſeveral maps for St. *Petersburgh*, to *Oreſcha*, or *Notteburgh*, now called *Sleutelburgh*; that is, in other words, from the gulf of *Finland* to the lake *Ladoga*, and that St. *Petersburgh* is ſituated along that river, within five leagues from *Cronſtat*, and ſeven from *Sleutelburgh*. That river is ſo broad near *Cronſtat*, that from one ſide one can hardly perceive, without glaſſes, the oppoſite bank; but it grows narrower as you go to St. *Petersburgh*, where it is but about one hundred and

and ſeventy toiſes, or about one thouſand feet broad, and continues much the ſame to the lake *Ladoga*. *Schanterny* is ſituated a league above St. *Petersburgh*; but that town is ſo large, that it reaches to that fort, and has a very large circuit.

The town of St. *Petersburgh* may be divided into two parts; one of which is in terra firma, on the ſide of *Ingria*; and the other conſiſts of five large iſlands. The admiralty is in one of the ſaid iſlands, being parted from the town only by a narrow canal, in which there are ſeveral bridges of communication; and amongſt others, a very fine one, which comes to the highway or road from St. *Petersburgh* to *Moſcow*; of which I ſhall further ſpeak, after having taken notice of ſome other particulars.

His Czariſh majeſty has two palaces, one for winter and another for ſummer, on the *Ingria* ſide; but they have erected in the iſland, on the oppoſite ſide, by which runs the great current, or channel of the river, the citadel, the council-houſe, the chancery, the magazines, and the exchange for merchants; which is troubleſome enough, becauſe there is no coming at it but by boats. They are building very much upon the iſland *Bazil*, or *Waſſis-Oeſtroff*. Prince *Menzekoff* has there a palace near the great river; and all the lords of the court are obliged

obliged to build ſtone houſes in the ſame place. They are alſo erecting there a large edifice, in which merchants will be obliged to have ſhops and ſell their goods therein.

The houſes of St. *Petersburgh* are already computed to exceed forty thouſand; but moſt of them have but one ſtory: a great many are built with timber; and thoſe that are built with ſtone are but indifferent: ſome others are built with bricks, covered over with mortar on both ſides: they ſeem at firſt very fine, being built according to a new architecture, half *French* and half *Italian;* but when that mortar falls to pieces, which happens ſhortly after, by reaſon of the great froſts, and other injuries of the air, they have but a diſagreeable aſpect.

The ſtreets are broad, and in a ſtraight line; but amongſt others there is one beginning at the admiralty, which is above half a league long, in a ſtraight line, and ſo broad, that two rows of trees are planted on both ſides. That ſtreet, or rather the road that joins to it, has been extended to fifty leagues diſtance from St. *Petersburgh*, through forreſts and other difficult places; and the Czar deſigns to continue it to *Moſcow*.

Deſcription

Deſcription of *Cronſtat*.

From a late celebrated collection of Travels.

THE iſland of *Cronſtat* is near fifteen miles in circumference, but very barren: the town is computed to have near twenty-five thouſand inhabitants, including ſoldiers and ſailors: beſides this, there are only two or three ſmall villages for fiſhermen. Here is a palace built by *Peter* the Great, and about twenty-five large brick-houſes; but the ſupport of them being expenſive, they are left uninhabited. In this place, *Peter* the Great had formed a plan of fixing the trade, and deſigned to cut a canal near twenty miles long, on the ſouth ſide of the gulf, which would have paſſed through the garden of *Strelna Muſa*. The intent of this, was to provide a ſafe paſſage for barks loaded with the commodities of this country: however, this project was hardly practicable, for it would be dangerous for large and heavy loaden barks to croſs from *Orenjenbaun* to *Cronſtat*; but the common reaſon aſſigned for this great Prince's declining this ſcheme, is, that it would have prevented his breeding up the ſeamen, who are now conſtantly employed during the ſummer ſeaſon in navigating decked

decked veſſels laden with merchandize from St. *Petersburgh* to *Cronſtat*.

Here is one of the greateſt curioſities in the world of its kind; which is the dry dock, contrived by *Peter* the Great. This work, by the length of time it has been in hand, and the alterations made by the different directors of it, muſt have created a large expence. It reaches about ſeven hundred fathoms, is ſixty feet broad at the bottom, eighty feet at the top, and forty feet deep, having flood-gates in different parts. It is intended to receive fourteen ſhips of the line of battle, to build or repair them dry, and afterwards float them off. There is a grand reſervoir, which was then almoſt dug eighteen feet lower than the docks, and conſequently is near ſixty feet deep; and yet there were no ſprings which incommoded the workmen: it is about ſix hundred feet long, and three hundred broad, and will contain about one hundred and forty thouſand tons of water. The harbour or wet dock, intended for the crown ſhips, will contain eighty men of war; and in that for the trade, two hundred and fifty merchant ſhips can be moored; but the latter having the deepeſt water, is oftentimes kept for the large ſhips of war.

The dry dock.

Reſervoir.

The harbour.

Account of the Revenues, Taxes, Forces and Dreſs of the *Ruſſians*.

Revenue.

THE revenues of the *Ruſſian* empire, which were formerly of five millions only, are now increaſed to fifteen millions of rubles (*a*), and are yet improveable, without diſtreſſing the ſubject. Theſe may be computed to ariſe from the pole tax of ſeventy-five copeeks a head, on eight millions ſeven hundred and fifty thouſand male ſubjects. The boyar, or lord, receives of his boors about one hundred and twenty copeeks (*b*) each head male, according to the goodneſs of the eſtate: ſome bring in yet more conſiderably, and others cannot ſupport themſelves. The Lord has alſo a certain number of them to work for him, but he pays the tax due to the crown on all his vaſſals; and after a reviſion is made, the ſame tax continues, whatever mortality may ſucceed, till a further reviſion takes place. The *Circaſſians* who inhabit the *Ukraine*, pay but a quarter of a ruble a head. The cuſtoms in St. *Petersburgh*, *Riga*, *Narva* and *Archangel*, produce above a million of rubles; and the monopoly of ſalt, pot-aſh, rhubarb, ſpirituous liquors, with the produce of the government's iron mines in *Siberia*,

(*a*) Three millions *Sterling*.
(*b*) One ruble, and a fifth, or five ſhillings and a penny.

beria, the *China* trade, and inland duties, conſtitute the remainder. This ſum of three millions *Sterling*, which we have learned in *Great Britain* the art of ſwallowing in a three or four months campaign, anſwers the exigencies of the *Ruſſian* ſtate, and makes them courted by their friends, and dreaded by their enemies: nor is it ſtrange, if one conſiders that the pay of a Major-general in *Ruſſia* is not above three thouſand ſix hundred rubles a year (*c*), a Commandant or Brigadier one thouſand eight hundred, a Colonel eight hundred, a Major four hundred, a Captain one hundred and eighty, a Lieutenant one hundred and twenty, and a common ſoldier ſix. They are ſaid to have at leaſt two hundred and fifty thouſand regulars, including garriſons of ſeventy thouſand; and ſuppoſing a third part of them cloathed annually, and giving them their allowance of ſalt, croop (*d*), and bread, their pay will hardly exceed thirty rubles (*e*) a man, officers included; and conſequently, this formidable force coſts only ſeven millions five hundred thouſand rubles (*f*), which does not take up half the national income.

Pay of the ſoldiery.

Number of forces.

(*c*) Seven hundred and fifty pounds.
(*d*) A ſpecies of meal.
(*e*) Six pounds ten ſhillings.
(*f*) One million five hundred and ſeventy-five thouſand pounds *Sterling*.

Fleet. The *Ruſſian* naval power, which was created by *Peter* the Great, appears to be ſufficient for all the purpoſes of that empire, and capable of ſupporting their new conqueſts on the *Baltick*, ſhould the *Swedes* ever attempt to retake them by a naval power: though I believe the friendſhip of the *Britiſh* nation, as a maritime power, is no unpleaſing circumſtance to *Ruſſia* upon this very account. Their fleet conſiſts of twenty-five ſhips of the line, and fifteen bomb-ketches, fire-ſhips and frigates, of about thirty guns each; of which the greateſt part are kept in repair: and one, two, or three capital ſhips are built and launched every year at St. *Petersburgh;* but what gives a great weight to their naval ſtrength, is the number of their gallies, which carry from one hundred to three hundred men, of which, only ſix or eight are ſailors. Theſe are proper for the *Baltick* in the ſummer; and as they draw but little water, they are formidable objects on an enemy's coaſt, as the *Swedes* experienced in their war with *Peter* the Great. The *Ruſſians* are computed to have near ten thouſand ſeamen; of which, above half generally live at *Cronſtat*, and when employed as carpenters, or about ſhip affairs, are allowed proviſions and ten copeeks a-day.

The

The collection of the revenues, which is so vast an expence in *England*, is a very inconsiderable charge to the *Russian* government, their collectors being mostly paid by the perquisites annexed to their employments; from hence, it is easy to reconcile how indispensably necessary presents are in *Russia* in transacting business with any of the public departments, though I must own my opinion, that perquisites tend to the ruin of empires.

Collection of the taxes no charge in *Russia*.

The number of souls in St. *Petersburgh* are generally computed at two hundred and fifty thousand, including the garrison, which is numerous; but in reckoning the subjects throughout the whole empire, they lay it down as a rule, that the hundred and seventy fifth male raises an army of near fifty thousand men, and consequently supposing an equal number of females, the whole may be reckoned seventeen millions five hundred thousand souls: the tributary *Tartars*, *Russian Ukraine* (*g*), and the conquered provinces (*h*), are not included in this account; if we consider the vast extent of that empire, though many parts are not inhabited, it is probable this number is near the truth. As to the *Ukraine*, I have been assured that one estate in that country (*i*) contained

(*g*) The word signifies frontier.
(*h*) *Livonia*, *Estonia*, *Ingria* and part of *Finland*.
(*i*) Count *Gollofin*'s.

tained ſixteen thouſand acres of arable, and nine thouſand of paſture land.

Beſides the ordinary computation of two hundred and fifty thouſand regulars, the *Ruſſians* can collect a body of forty thouſand, or more, of *Calmucks*, *Coſſacks*, and other *Tartars*. In the laſt *Turkiſh* war I have been aſſured that *Ruſſia* had above three hundred thouſand troops in pay; thus with their own money at home, or in foreign pay, when abroad in foreign ſervice, ſo long as theſe people train up a number of good officers, they muſt have great weight in the political ſcale in *Europe*, as well as in *Aſia*. Their ſoldiers bear the extremities of cold and heat, hunger and thirſt; and when well conducted to the charge, have generally ſhewn great intrepidity. Being provoked by long reſiſtance they are apt to be cruel when conquerors, of which I have heard ſeveral ſtories from thoſe who ſerved in the laſt *Turkiſh* war.

Dreſs. The common people in this country are cloathed with long coats made of dreſt ſheep ſkins, with the wool towards their bodies. Theſe are admirably adapted to the climate, and coſt only two rubles (*k*); they alſo uſe a coarſe cloth, in which they ſwadle their legs and feet; this is ſecured by a cord of reeds, their ſandals being alſo of the ſame material.

(*k*) Nine ſhillings.

material. Their caps are lined with fur, and cover the ears and neck as well as their heads: they wear ſaſhes round their waſte, and double gloves, one of woollen and the other of leather, which take in the hand without any diſtinction, except the thumb; and theſe are alſo an eſſential part of their cloathing.

People of any diſtinction for the moſt part dreſs as we do in *England*, and are under no other neceſſity than that of wearing a full great coat lined with fur (*l*), ſuch as wolf's, fox's, or linx's, with a deep quilted or fur lined cap when they go abroad. The women of the lower claſs, beſides their petticoats, wear ſheep ſkins, as the men: thoſe who move in a higher ſphere, wear flowered ſilk cloaks (*m*) lined with furs, of which the moſt common ſort is of white hares. Ladies of the firſt diſtinction are ſeldom without theſe cloaks lined with rich furs, and by the advantage of coaches or ſledges and domeſtic conveniencies, perhaps ſuffer leſs by cold than the people in the ſouth of *France:* although, upon the whole, I can by no means think it a climate conducive to the prolongation of life, eſpecially to aged perſons, and valetudinarians.

Anecdotes

(*l*) The *Ruſſians* call it a ſhoobe.

(*m*) There are two kinds, ſome with and ſome without arms.

Anecdotes of PETER the Great.

THE moſt early part of this Prince's life gave ſuch proof of a mind formed for great actions, that he ſeemed to be a man from his infancy, and with his manhood the hero grew up to that prodigious height, of which he gave the world ſo many proofs.

The intimations he had received from foreigners of the government, arts, and improvements of other countries, made him weep over the ignorance and barbarity of his own; but his ſorrow gave way to his hopes; and fired with the noble ardour of true greatneſs, he reſolved to purſue it by the only path which, from the light of his own genius, he diſcovered to lead to it. He had too good a judgment to attempt the thing by any means but thoſe which alone were practicable. How amazing was his reſolution, who was born to empire, and had an abſolute power over ſo many millions of people, to humble himſelf to the low offices and laborious drudgery of life! But he ſaw that example, aſſiſted by his boundleſs authority, could alone inſpire his people with juſt ſentiments, or compel them to a due obedience; and that the opulency and power of nations muſt ariſe from uſeful arts and

and mechanic employments: he ſought that power and opulency at their fountain head, and determined in his own perſon to act as much like a GOD as a man could do, diffuſing his influence by actions, the due effect of which, humanly ſpeaking, it was impoſſible for any man, except himſelf, to produce. Thus he ſubmitted as if he had been born only to a mean and low fortune; and determined to do that which ſhould deſerve a crown; and when he had obtained it, to take on him the true glory of a King, in wearing it gracefully, and according to the order of that providence which watches over the good of mankind. His actions demonſtrate that he thought it more glorious to excel as an artificer or mechanic, than to ſway a ſceptre upon no other title than his birth.

It is hard to ſay what the world has loſt in the journal which he kept himſelf; probably it contained what no hiſtorian can pretend to relate of him. I ſhall mention a few particulars which I do not find recorded of him in any hiſtorical accounts, being what I learned of perſons with whom he frequently converſed. In *Amſterdam* he entered in a dock-yard as a common carpenter, in the name of *Peter Michaillo*, but he was known only to the maſter of the yard. It happened one day that *Peter*, by miſtake,

ſtake, took the tools of another perſon inſtead of his own; the owner diſcovering his tools in the hands of his companion, and theſe not being readily reſtored to him, words enſued, and the man gave *Peter* a blow; the maſter of the yard being informed of the matter, ſent for the ſuppoſed offender, and in the preſence of this Prince reproved him ſeverely, and threatned him with puniſhment. *Peter* now put on the Emperor, not in the inſolence of power, and with the externals of a King, but in pleading for the injured. 'The man ſays he, 'is in the right, and I am in fault;' and immediately made up the quarrel by giving him money. Thus did this great monarch learn the true art of life and government, and through this voluntary arduous diſcipline, teach himſelf how to rule the ſpirits of an ignorant and uncivilized people.

It has been imputed to this Prince, that he was cruel. The exact rule of mercy and juſtice cannot always be obſerved by any mortal man: and leaſt of all by princes, who cannot ſearch to the bottom of every thing. A man of his ſtrength of reſolution, cannot be ſuppoſed to have a heart of the melting ſort; and the ingratitude and inſenſibility of his ſubjects, their repugnance to accept the terms of their own felicity by the means he ſought it for them,

means

means ſo obviouſly productive of the end, and yet ſo obſtinately reſiſted, could not but fire him with ſome reſentment, and might alſo perſuade him they could be ruled only by a rod of iron. Thus he might commit ſome acts of ſeverity, but that he put men to death with his own hand, I am perſuaded is not true (*n*).

An amorous diſpoſition, and a cruel one, are compatible in the ſame perſon, as experience often evinces; but cruelty and greatneſs of mind, ſuch as this Prince demonſtrated, are not compatible. His great foible was the love of women; he was not profuſe, nor even generous in his amours, if one may believe the reports of Miſs *Croſs*, who was diſtinguiſhed, in her way, by the Emperor's favour in *England*. In *Holland* he was ſeen with a girl in his arms at a common drinking-houſe, of which repreſentation there is now an excellent picture in the palace of *Peterhoff*. A gardiner once threw a hough at him for his amorous advances to a girl who was working in a garden. In ſhort, for a King he was as little elegant as expenſive in his amours: as in things of the higheſt moment, ſo in this he acted according to his inclinations, without any regard

(*n*) In the caſe of the rebellion, ſuppreſſed by General *Gordon*, hiſtorians mention his being angry that the executions were not performed before his arrival at *Moſcow*.

to forms. It is true, in this inſtance he was no hero, but as ſervilely ſubmiſſive to an imperious appetite as a common man: and it ſeemed in him but mere appetite, at leaſt we do not find that the torment or pleaſure ariſing from a paſſionate indulgence, or a reaſonable government of this weakneſs, ever drew him into inconveniences, or protracted the progreſs of that active and extenſive glory for which he was ſo much diſtinguiſhed: and for this vice, we muſt ſay with Sir *Walter Raleigh*, as well as I remember, 'If '*Adam* in his ſtate of innocence; *David* 'GOD's choſen ſervant; and *Solomon*, a 'man of the greateſt wiſdom, ſwerved from 'their duty to the living GOD, through the 'love they bore to woman, it is not ſo 'wonderful as lamentable that men in all 'ſucceeding ages have, *&c.*' This great Prince, who underſtood ſo well what regarded the good of the ſociety, could hardly exclude the religion he profeſſed from the ſyſtem of his politics; and we may charitably preſume that he, like *David*, made his peace with heaven.

He was often ſeen to weep when he ordered executions. Miſs *Hambleton*, (*o*) a maid of honour to the Empreſs *Katharine*, had an amour which at different times produced three children: ſhe had always pleaded ſickneſs,

(*o*) Some call this lady *Mackenzie*.

ſickneſs, but *Peter* being ſuſpicious, ordered his phyſician to attend her, who ſoon made the diſcovery. It alſo appeared that a ſenſe of ſhame had triumphed over her humanity, and that the children had been put to death as ſoon as born. *Peter* enquired if the father of them was privy to the murder; the lady inſiſted that he was innocent, for ſhe had always deceived him, by pretending they were ſent to nurſe. Juſtice now called on the Emperor to puniſh the offence. The lady was much beloved by the Empreſs, who pleaded for her: as to the amour it would have been pardonable, but not the murder. *Peter* ſent her to the caſtle, and went himſelf to viſit her: the fact being confeſſed, he pronounced her ſentence with tears, telling her that his duty as a Prince, and GOD's Vicegerent, called on him for that juſtice which her crime had rendered indiſpenſably neceſſary: and therefore ſhe muſt prepare for death. He attended her alſo upon the ſcaffold, where he embraced her with the utmoſt tenderneſs mixed with ſorrow: and ſome ſay, that when her head was ſtruck off, he took it up by the ear whilſt the lips were yet trembling, and kiſſed them: a circumſtance of an extraordinary nature, and yet not incredible, conſidering the peculiarities of his character.

How

How generous was his conduct to the *Swediſh* priſoners at the battle of *Pultawa!* He ſtruck one of his own officers for ſpeaking diſreſpectfully of the King of *Sweden* (*p*), and ſaid to him, 'Am I not a King, 'and might not my fortune have been the 'ſame as that Prince's?' But what a profuſion of ſound politics was diſplayed in his taking his ſword from his own ſide, and preſenting it as a token of his favour to the *Swediſh* General *Renchild*, upon the occaſion of that General's ſaying, 'though the 'King my maſter acted contrary to my opi-'nion, yet I thought myſelf bound, as a 'faithful ſubject, to obey his commands.'

As it is the cuſtom with us to interrupt converſation by drinking healths at table, in *Ruſſia* they add alſo another impertinence, by their ſervants offering wine whether you aſk for it or not. *Peter* was in warm diſcourſe with Admiral *Apraxin*, when the Vice-admiral *Senavin* preſented him with a ſalver of wine; the Emperor impatiently threw back his arm, which neceſſarily overſet the ſalver and ſtruck the Admiral: he then purſued his diſcourſe, as if nothing had happened; afterwards recollecting himſelf, he aſked the Admiral *Apraxin* if he had not ſtruck

(*p*) To this purpoſe, we may remember the ſtory of the *Perſian* ſoldier, who was told, 'Sir, you are paid to fight 'againſt *Alexander*, not to rail at him.'

ſtruck ſome body? 'Yes, ſays he, your 'majeſty ſtruck the Vice-admiral *Senavin*; 'tis true, he was in the wrong for interrupting your majeſty; but he is a very honeſt man, and a brave officer.' *Peter* then reproached himſelf for ſtriking an officer of that rank, ſent for him immediately, begged his pardon, kiſſed him, and the next day ſent him a preſent.

Valenſky, who had a command in the *Perſian* expedition, had been once beaten by *Peter*'s orders, miſtaking him for another. 'Well, ſays *Peter*, I am ſorry for it, but 'you will deſerve it one day or other, and 'then remind me that you are in arrears 'with me;' which accordingly happened upon that very expedition, and he was excuſed.

Thus did this great Prince temper the natural impetuoſity of his diſpoſition with the utmoſt tenderneſs and regard to thoſe who deſerved well of him. It is known that he himſelf ſubmitted to enter his name as a private man in the army he raiſed, that his greateſt ſubjects might have no expectations of any other advancement than what ſhould be due to their merit. He had moſt experience as a General, but his favourite paſſion inclined to the marine: he more than once appeared incognito as a common pilot, and received an *Engliſh* crown and a cheeſe for

for bringing a ſhip from the bar to *Cronſtat*.

This Prince had to contend not only with the perverſeneſs of the vulgar; he found it neceſſary to teach the higheſt orders of his people to ſubmit to the wholſome reſtraints of good laws. *Gagarin*, a ſenator, had been for ſome time Governor of *Siberia*, and accumulated more than a juſt miniſterial fortune by indirect practices, particularly by oppreſſing the caravans paſſing to and from *China*: at length, he was brought to St. *Petersburgh*, condemned and hanged on a gallows erected oppoſite the ſenate-houſe. After a few days, the ſenators begged that his majeſty would order the body to be removed, intimating that it was a ſcandal to their rank as ſenators. 'Yes, ſays the Emperor, let him be taken 'down then, and hung up at the common 'gallows;' which was accordingly performed.

The ſtory of his ſuppoſed intrigue with Baron *Gortz* to invade *England*, is mentioned by ſome hiſtorians: however that affair might be, he always denied it, but found matter of complaint againſt his Vice-chancellor *Shafferoff*, who after being brought to the block, his ſentence was changed into baniſhment. Upon a further examination of his papers it appeared, that during his miniſtry

miniſtry at the *Hague*, he had accepted a ſum of ten thouſand pounds for the diſcovery of a ſecret: *Peter* having received this evidence of his miniſter's guilt, would have recalled him to execution. *Oſterman*, afterwards Vice-chancellor, repreſented to the Emperor, that as he had pardoned *Shafferoff*, who had not been ſince guilty of any freſh crime, ſuch an action would ſully his honour: to which advice, though highly offended, he ſubmitted.

Weſtphalen, the *Daniſh* miniſter at the *Ruſſian* court, had ſent a remarkable piece of news to *Copenhagen*; *Peter*, by means of his miniſter in that city, procured *Weſtphalen's* own letter, and then challenged him upon the ſubject; *Weſtphalen* flatly denied that he had given any ſuch intelligence, till *Peter* produced his letter; upon which he very cooly replied, 'I ſee princes have 'long arms; your majeſty knows very well 'the duty I owe to my own Prince and 'country: was I in your majeſty's ſervice, 'I ſhould conſult your intereſt with the 'ſame fidelity.' *Peter*, though extremely diſguſted, acquieſced in this defence.

We muſt not be ſurprized that this Prince, while he was only a pupil in the ſchool of greatneſs, condeſcended to menial offices, or low mechanic employments, when only perſonal labour and perſonal

knowledge could anſwer the end he had in view. In the height of his glory, and after the completion of his conqueſt, he had ſo entire a contempt of theſe external circumſtances which ſometimes conſtitute the whole of a King, except the power annexed to royalty, that he ſeemed ambitious only of a ſovereignty in ſoul, and to act rather than appear the King. He had an extreme diſlike to rich cloaths, and was never ſo well ſatisfied as in his regimentals (*q*): he never wore but one ſuit of embroidery, and that for a ſingle day only. In the ſummer time it was his uſual cuſtom to drive about the ſtreets of St. *Petersburgh* in a chair with one horſe, without any other attendance than one ſoldier on horſeback. In winter, he has been ſeveral times ſeen in a common hackney ſledge (*r*). It would ſometimes happen that he had not the value of three-pence in his pocket to pay the fare; and he has more than once aſked the loan of this money of any perſon whom he knew, and accidentally

(*q*) A green cloth with a narrow gold lace, which is the richeſt cloathing in the army; and the *Ruſſians* as well as the *Pruſſians* are not permitted to wear any other cloaths than their regimentals. The Empreſs however made her ſea officers very fine, their cloaths being white cloth, and the captains have gold lace enough upon it to conſume a good part of their pay.

(*r*) Theſe are in value about four ſhillings; they are drawn by ſmall horſes, and driven by the commoneſt boors.

ly met; yet notwithſtanding theſe ſeeming improprieties, the ſuperiority of his genius ſupported the dignity of a great monarch; and it was by laying aſide pomp and ſplendor, which were uneſſential to his glory, that he appeared ſo much like a deity, in every place, almoſt at one and the ſame time. He was generally at his tribunals and public offices in the winter ſeaſon by five in the morning; and thus his perſonal attendance and knowledge of buſineſs, taught his ſubjects their reſpective duties; confined them to thoſe duties, and made the ſtate flouriſh. He was not contented without going to the bottom of things, and therefore, inſtead of making his people wait on him, he watched them; ſo that he was ſeldom to be found in the palace. Prince *Menzekoff* had the charge of public feaſts for foreign miniſters, ſo that *Peter* ſpent no time in vain ceremonies; and as to his own diet, it was rather coarſe than elegant.

It is morally impoſſible that ſuch a country as *Ruſſia* was, could be more ſpeedily reduced to a regular and conſiſtent plan of government; but the extremity of arbitrary power, which had long ſubſiſted, and the unpoliſhed manners which had for ſo many ages prevailed, ſeemed to have eſtabliſhed a rule of *Aſiatick* policy, which *Peter* was not able, or not willing intirely to deſtroy:

this conſiſted in a ſort of connivance in the Prince, in ſeeing the grandees pillage the lower claſſes of the people, according as their offices might afford them an occaſion; but when they had thus accumulated wealth, and rendered themſelves obnoxious to the laws, their ſovereign came in for the plunder, either by degrading the offender, or ſuffering him to ranſom one part by delivering up the other.

But it is amazing, that this great Prince did not enter ſeriouſly into the conſideration of the bad adminiſtration of the laws, with regard to property and juſtice, till the very cloſe of his life, and in his laſt ſickneſs. The reſolution he then took, confined the determination of common cauſes to the term of eleven days; but it was no more than a flaſh of light which involves the traveller in greater darkneſs. Laws which are ſo obviouſly intended to ſupport the ſociety, are now in the moſt parts of *Europe* ſo perverſely wreſted to the purpoſes of lawyers, to the eternal reproach of chriſtendom, as to become the plague and diſtreſs of the virtuous; and the inſtrument of the moſt deteſtable conduct of the baſe and corrupt part of mankind: nor is there, I believe, a ſingle country in all *Europe*, except *Pruſſia*, either in limited or arbitrary monarchies, where this is not complained of as a moſt crying

crying abuſe. Had this great Prince lived a few years longer to ſway the *Ruſſian* ſceptre, it is more than probable he would have ſhewn the King of *Pruſſia* that example, which this Prince, who deſerves to be called Great, had he no other virtue, has given to all the other ſovereigns and nations in *Europe*.

After what I have obſerved of the condeſcenſions familiar to *Peter* the Great, the reader will not be ſurprized that he converſed with all ſorts of people of whom he could learn any thing uſeful; among whom, ſome of the *Engliſh* and other foreign merchants were frequently his companions. He eat and drank with them, and was often godfather to their children: if his godchild died, he has even more than once attended their funerals. He was very inquiſitive about trade, yet he confeſſed it was what he leaſt underſtood: but his eſtabliſhment of the commerce in St. *Petersburgh*, and bringing the greateſt part of it from *Archangel*; the premiums he offered to thoſe who ſhould find out new branches of trade; his ſetting up and encouraging new manufactories of linen and hemp in his own country; the great countenance he gave to foreign merchants, and many other ſuch like circumſtances, are certain indications that he underſtood, in many inſtances the means

means of advancing commerce as well as the great end of it.

This Prince made even his pleaſures and amuſements ſubſervient to the important ends of his government. He had more than once received very melancholy proofs of the impatience of his ſubjects under the reformation which he had planned, and was now accompliſhing: this rendered him extremely ſuſpicious of them. As men's hearts are generally moſt open in their cups, he often drank with them liberally; ſometimes at court, and oftner at their own houſes. His manners ſeemed to be rude, in requiring even the ladies, upon certain occaſions, to ſwallow goblets of wine, or other ſtrong liquors; but in this he had his views: drinking is ſtill the vice of *Ruſſia*, but in a more elegant manner than in paſt times.

He had frequent convulſive diſtortions of his head and countenance, contracted by a fright in his youth, upon an occaſion when his life was in danger; but in ſuch caſes, it was always the rule of the company he was in, to look down, or a different way, and purſue their diſcourſe without ſeeming to regard him.

To prevent a ſurprize, or any attempt on his life, he would never ly alone: when he was not with the Empreſs or other companion,

nion, he ordered one of his chamberlains (s) to ſleep with him; which was an uncomfortable ſituation to them, as he was very angry if they awaked him; and in his ſleep he often graſped them very hard.

What compleated his character as a maſter of exquiſite art and acute judgment, he diverted his people into a contempt of that ſordid ignorance which for ſo many ages had reigned in this country, and which he now made it his taſk to baniſh. This could not be done more effectually, than by ridiculing a ſuperſtitious reverence of the cuſtoms of their forefathers. With this view, he ordered a great number of dreſſes of the ſeveral officers of the crown and court as worn in paſt ages; and in theſe, himſelf and his whole court appeared in maſquerade: thus exhibiting themſelves to the people under ſeveral comic figures, they diverted them into a perſuaſion that they were at leaſt as wiſe in their age, and in their appearances, as their fathers had been before them.

A

(s) Whom the *Ruſſians* call *Denſhicks*.

A ſuccinct account of *Ruſſian* Coins, Weights and Meaſures.

IT is remarkable, that when the *Ruſſian* trade began to flouriſh, and for ſome time after, their ruble, which was intrinſically worth no leſs than ninety-nine current ſtivers of *Holland*, was eſtimated on exchange at ſeventy current ſtivers, and the price of their commodities regulated accordingly in the merchants calculation of them: at length, it was reduced to fifty, and from forty-five to fifty it has ſtood for many years. The *Ruſſian* ruble has too conſiderable an alloy to encourage the exportation, but it is not ſo baſe as to induce any piratical traders to bring falſe coin into the country; I ſpeak of the ſilver money. But by an error in politics in a late reign, the want of money induced the government to make a copper coin of five copeeks value, which was not intrinſically worth two: the conſequence of which was, that ſome millions of this coin was run in upon them, particularly by the *Jews* of *Poland*; ſo that at length, in the year 1744, 1745 and 1746, the government wiſely reduced the value each year a copeek, and it now ſtands at two copeeks. They keep accounts in rubles and copeeks, one hundred copeeks

to

to a ruble (*t*), and their old way of reckoning yet in the greateſt uſe, as it is in ſome parts of *Germany*, is with beads on wires, which they work without pen and ink.

The ruble, which is the principal coin, is alſo divided into halves, quarters, and tenths; which laſt they call greevens: they had formerly ſilver copeek pieces, but theſe were too intrinſically good to continue long in the country, and were at length called in. They have a gold coin, of two rubles value, but not in abundance; alſo ducats of the preſent Empreſs's coin; which vary in price, but are never under 2¼ rubles. In copper, they have beſides the two copeeks already mentioned, deniſhkas, or half a copeek, and poluſhkas or quarters.

Their DRY MEASURES *are*,

4 Wocemik,	- -	1 Cheterwit, = ¼ths of an *Engliſh* peck.
8 Cheterwits,	- -	1 Chetworth, ordinarily computed = to 23, to 24 pecks, or 6 buſhels *Engliſh*.

(*t*) Worth about four ſhillings and three-pence.

LIQUID MEASURE.

8 Kruſhquas,	- -	1 Wedro,=13 *Engliſh* quarts.
1½ Wedros,	- - -	1 Stakan (*u*).
2 Stakans,	- - -	1 Anchor.
6 Anchors,	- - -	1 Hogſhead.

WEIGHTS.

1 Zalotnick,	- -	=2 d. wts. 17 grains ¾ths *Engliſh*.
3 Dittos,	- - -	1 Lote.
32 Lotes,	- - -	1 Pound.
40 Pounds,	- - -	1 Pood, 36 lbs. do.
10 Poods,	- - -	1 Berquewitz.
63 Poods,	- - -	1 Tun do.

But the *Engliſh* hundred generally comes neat to 123½ *Ruſſian* pounds.

Account of Mr. ILBRAND's journey from *Moſcow* to *China* 1692*.

Taken from M. le Bruyn's *Travels.*

HE left *Moſcow* in the month of *March*, on a ſledge, but had got but very little way on his journey, before it

(*u*) Stakan, in the common uſe of the word, ſignifies a glaſs.

* Mr. *Ilbrand* was ſent at the head of a ſolemn embaſſy from *Peter* the Great to the Emperor of *China*, to adjuſt ſome differences betwixt the two empires: for the ſucceſs of his negotiation, ſee Vol. I. Book II. p. 94.

it rained ſo hard, that he was expoſed to very great danger, by the abundance of waters he met with in his road to *Wologda*, where he ſtaid ſome days, to recover the fatigue he had gone through, and wait for fair weather. The froſt coming on again, the ways were paſſable, and he purſued his journey towards *Suchina*, and from thence to the city of the great *Uſtiga*, where the *Suchina* and the *Irga* uniting their ſtreams form the famous river *Dwina*, which name means a double river.

He arrived next in the country of the *Syrenes*, whoſe inhabitants ſpeak a language very different from the *Ruſſian*, though ſomewhat like that which is ſpoke in *Livonia*, as he was informed by ſome of his train, who were of that country. They are of the *Greek* church, and ſubject to his Czarian majeſty, to whom they pay the cuſtomary duties, but have neither Governor nor Woywode. They chuſe their own judges, and if any queſtion ariſes that they are unable to decide, they go to *Moſcow*, where they have recourſe to the Precauſe of *Poſolſke*, or office for foreign affairs. They differ very little from the *Ruſſians* in ſtature, and wear the ſame dreſs that was in uſe among them, till altered by the order of *Peter* the Great. They are very ignorant, and have no tradition among them concerning their

LIQUID MEASURE.

8 Kruſhquas,	- -	1 Wedro, = 13 *Engliſh* quarts.
1½ Wedros,	- - -	1 Stakan (*u*).
2 Stakans,	- - -	1 Anchor.
6 Anchors,	- - -	1 Hogſhead.

WEIGHTS.

1 Zalotnick,	- -	= 2 d. wts. 17 grains ¾ths *Engliſh*.
3 Dittos,	- - -	1 Lote.
32 Lotes,	- - -	1 Pound.
40 Pounds,	- - -	1 Pood, 36 lbs. do.
10 Poods,	- - -	1 Berquewitz.
63 Poods,	- - -	1 Tun do.

But the *Engliſh* hundred generally comes neat to 123½ *Ruſſian* pounds.

Account of Mr. ILBRAND's journey from *Moſcow* to *China* 1692*.

Taken from M. le Bruyn's *Travels.*

HE left *Moſcow* in the month of *March*, on a ſledge, but had got but very little way on his journey, before it

(*u*) Stakan, in the common uſe of the word, ſignifies a glaſs.

* Mr. *Ilbrand* was ſent at the head of a ſolemn embaſſy from *Peter* the Great to the Emperor of *China*, to adjuſt ſome differences betwixt the two empires: for the ſucceſs of his negotiation, ſee Vol. I. Book II. p. 94.

it rained ſo hard, that he was expoſed to very great danger, by the abundance of waters he met with in his road to *Wologda*, where he ſtaid ſome days, to recover the fatigue he had gone through, and wait for fair weather. The froſt coming on again, the ways were paſſable, and he purſued his journey towards *Suchina*, and from thence to the city of the great *Uſtiga*, where the *Suchina* and the *Irga* uniting their ſtreams form the famous river *Dwina*, which name means a double river.

He arrived next in the country of the *Syrenes*, whoſe inhabitants ſpeak a language very different from the *Ruſſian*, though ſomewhat like that which is ſpoke in *Livonia*, as he was informed by ſome of his train, who were of that country. They are of the *Greek* church, and ſubject to his Czarian majeſty, to whom they pay the cuſtomary duties, but have neither Governor nor Woywode. They chuſe their own judges, and if any queſtion ariſes that they are unable to decide, they go to *Moſcow*, where they have recourſe to the Precauſe of *Poſolſke*, or office for foreign affairs. They differ very little from the *Ruſſians* in ſtature, and wear the ſame dreſs that was in uſe among them, till altered by the order of *Peter* the Great. They are very ignorant, and have no tradition among them concerning their

own hiſtory. They ſubſiſt chiefly by agriculture, except a part of them, upon the banks of the river *Zizol*, who have ſome grey furs to traffick with. They live very little in towns, but for the moſt part in little villages and hamlets, ſcattered up and down in the woods. The country is about ſeventy *German* leagues in length, and extends quite to *Kaigorod*, butting upon a great foreſt, where M. *Ilbrand* was a ſecond time taken with a violent thaw, and heavy rain, that in one night's time, raiſed a flood of waters all round the wood, which retarded him four days without being able to go backwards or forwards. At length, with great difficulty, he got away, by throwing bridges over the rivers, and other helps; and came to *Kaigorod*, a pretty conſiderable fortreſs upon the *Kama*, on the 16th of *April*.

He would willingly have held on his way quite to *Solikamſkoi*, the capital of the great *Permia*, that he might have gone by land to *Siberia*, over the mountains of *Wergotur*; but the thaw continuing, he found it impracticable; therefore it being juſt at the cloſe of the winter ſeaſon, he reſolved to ſtay ſome days, till the *Kama* ſhould become navigable; providing himſelf, in the mean time, with every thing neceſſary for the purſuit of his journey, as well as to defend himſelf againſt the free-booters in thoſe parts,

parts, who had not long before pillaged even the city of *Kaigorod* itſelf.

On the 25th he arrived at *Solikamſkoi*, which is a large and rich city, where are many conſiderable merchants, and very fine ſalt works. They make large quantities of ſalt here, which they ſend away in large veſſels built for that purpoſe, in each of which they load a hundred and twenty thouſand weight at a time.

On the 14th of *May*, he embarked at *Solikamſkoi*, and croſſing the little river *Uſolkat*, half a league from this city, he entered the *Kama* again, and croſſed that river from *Europe* to *Aſia*, arriving in the country of the firſt *Tartars* of *Siberia*, called *Wogulſki*, which is indifferently well peopled, and a moſt pleaſant country all along the banks of the *Suſawaia*, having on it all ſorts of flowers and odoriferous herbs; with prodigious numbers of deer, and all ſorts of game. As the *Tartars* of *Wogul* upon this river are heathens, he had the curioſity to go on ſhore to talk with them, concerning their belief and manner of life.

They are robuſt, with large heads; and their religion conſiſts of no more than making an offering once a year. To this purpoſe they aſſemble in the woods, and there kill a beaſt of each kind; though their chief victims are horſes, and a ſort of goats.

They

They ſlay them, and then hanging them upon a tree, fall down before them, which is their only worſhip. They eat the fleſh together afterwards, and then return home. They are not able to give any manner of reaſon for their belief, or way of worſhip; but think it enough, that they received it from their fathers. Strange people, who ſay their prayers but once a year, and that to a dead horſe!

Mr. *Ilbrand*, the *Muſcovite* miniſter; aſked them if they had any knowledge of a God, and if they did not believe there was a ſupreme Being in heaven, who created all things, and governs the world by his good providence, and who gives rain and fair weather? They anſwered, it was not unlikely, ſeeing the ſun and moon which they worſhipped, and the other ſtars, were placed in the firmament, and that there was doubtleſs a power that ruled them: but they would by no means agree, that there was a devil, becauſe he had never made himſelf known to them: yet they do not deny the reſurrection of the dead, but know nothing of what is to become of them. When any of them dies, the body is depoſited in the ground, and covered with their moſt precious ornaments, whether the deceaſed be man or woman: they erect no monuments to the dead, but they put money

ney by them, in proportion to their circumſtances when living, that they may want nothing neceſſary for them at the day of reſurrection. They make great lamentations about the bodies of their dead; nor muſt any man marry a ſecond wife, till he has buried his firſt a year. When they happen to have a dog die, that has been ſerviceable to them in hunting, or any other way; in honour of him they erect a little wooden hut, ſix feet high, upon four poſts, where they place him, and let him remain as long as it laſts.

They may have as many wives as they can maintain; and when they want to marry, they buy their wives of their parents, and have ſcarce any ceremony at their weddings: they only invite their neareſt relations to be preſent, and having entertained them, the new-married couple go to bed without any more to do. When the women draw near the time of their delivery, they retire into a wood, to a cabin prepared for them on purpoſe, where they ly in, and their huſbands are not to go near them for two months.

They live in ſquare wooden huts, after the manner of the *Ruſſian* peaſants; but uſe hearths inſtead of ſtoves, and burn wood. As ſoon as the wood is burnt to a coal, they cover the opening, where the ſmoke went

went out, with a piece of ice, and by that means retain all the heat in the room, without ſhutting out the light, which ſhines through the ice at top. They uſe no chairs, but have, inſtead of them, benches like taylor's ſhop-boards in *England*, upon which, like them too, they ſit croſs legged, and the ſame ſerve them for beds at night.

They ſubſiſt by hunting; their chief game is elks, which abound in this country. They ſhoot them with arrows, and dry their fleſh, which they cut in ſlices or ſlips, and hang it up in the air in their houſes; and when it has been thoroughly wet, and is quite putrified, they dry it a ſecond time, and then account it delicious food. They have ſnares and traps to take the elks, as well as by ſhooting them. Theſe *Tartars* live all along the river *Suſowaia*, quite to the caſtle of *Utka*; and are under the protection of the Czar, to whom they pay an annual tribute.

Mr. *Ilbrand* having quitted the country of theſe heathens, arrived on the 1ſt of *June*, at the fortreſs of *Utka*, upon the frontiers of the *Tartars* of *Baſkier* and *Uſſimi*; and from thence proceeded to *Neujanſkoi*, than between which places a finer country is hardly to be ſeen, full of meadows, woods, lakes, well cultivated lands, abounding with every thing, and well peopled with *Ruſſians*.

Upon

Upon the 21ſt of *June* he arrived at *Tumeen*, which is alſo well peopled; three fourths of the inhabitants are Chriſtians, and the reſt *Mahometan Tartars*. When the envoy arrived here, he found the people in the town, and all the neighbourhood in a conſternation, on account of the *Coſſacks* and *Calmuck Tartars*, who had juſt then made an invaſion into *Siberia*, where they had plundered ſeveral villages and killed the inhabitants, and now threatened this town, from whence they were not above fifteen *German* leagues diſtant. But the Governor ſent for troops from *Tobol*, and ſome other places, with which he purſued, and killed a number of the *Tartars*. The *Muſcovite* miniſter thought it not convenient to ſtay here, but embarked on the *Tobol* with a new ſet of rowers and a guard of ſoldiers.

Upon the 1ſt of *July*, he happily arrived at *Tobolſky*, a ſtrong place, where is a large ſtone monaſtery with towers ſo high, that it might be well miſtaken for a fortreſs. This city ſtands upon a hill at the conflux of the *Tobol* and the *Irtis*. The foot of the hill, and the ſhore of the *Irtis*, are inhabited by *Tartars*, and *Mahometan Bucharians*, who carry on a great trade with the *Calmucks* upon the river, and even go as far as *China*, by the lake *Jamaſchowa*. *Tobolſky* is the capital of *Siberia*, and its juriſdiction

reaches as far as *Barabu*, from *Wergotur* to the river *Oby*, to the eaſtward of the *Samoides*; to the northward quite to the country of the *Oſtiacks*; and weſtward as far as *Uſſa*, and the river *Suſawaia*.

Mr. *Ilbrand* having provided himſelf in every thing neceſſary, and particularly with a good guard, departed from *Tobolſky*, and fell down the *Irtis*, upon the ſhores of which are ſeveral villages, inhabited by *Tartars* and *Oſtiacks*: he arrived at *Samoroskoi-jam*, where he changed his rowers, and raiſed maſts in the larger veſſels, to be able to ſet ſail up the *Oby*, when the wind ſhould be favourable, the *Irtis* falling into this river by ſeveral openings not far from *Samoroskoi-jam*.

The water of the *Irtis* is white and light, and comes from the mountains in the country of the *Calmucks*. This river runs from the ſouth to the north-eaſt, and paſſes through the two lakes of *Kebak* and *Suſan*. To the ſouth-eaſt, it is bordered by lofty mountains, which are crowned with cedars, and the land on the other ſide, to the north-weſt, is low, and full of paſture grounds, where are great black bears, wolves, foxes, red and grey; and upon the banks of the river *Kaſimka*, which diſcharges itſelf into the *Oby*, not far from *Samoroskoi-jam*, are

are the fineſt grey furs of all *Siberia*, excepting thoſe in the woods of *Hectkoi Wollock*.

The inhabitants in this country are for the moſt part *Ruſſians*, in the pay of his Czarian majeſty, and are obliged to furniſh the Woywodes ſent hither, and all thoſe who travel into *Siberia*, upon the Prince's buſineſs, with carriages and guides, as well to go by the water in ſummer as upon the ice in the winter, as far as the city of *Surgant*, upon the *Oby*, at reaſonable rates. They keep a great number of dogs to draw their ſledges in the winter, not being able to uſe horſes, on account of the depth of the ſnow, which is ſometimes a fathom deep upon the *Oby*.

Upon the 29th of *July* M. *Ilbrand* departed from *Samvroskoi-jam*, and with two veſſels went down the principal branch of the *Irtis*, towards the *Oby*, where he arrived the next day; and upon the 6th of *Auguſt* came to *Surgut*, which ſtands upon the eaſt ſide of this river. In theſe parts, up the country to the eaſtward, going up the *Oby*, from *Surgut*, quite to the city of *Narum*, are very fine ſables, as well of a pale brown as black; alſo the fineſt ermins of all *Siberia*, and even of all *Ruſſia*; and black foxes of unſpeakable beauty; the fineſt of which are ſet apart for his Czarian ma-

jeſty, and are ſometimes valued at two or three hundred rubles a-piece: ſome of them exceed the choiceſt ſables of *Dauria*.

Having been ſome time mounting the *Oby*, ſometimes by the help of the ſail, ſometimes by the ſlow labour of the tow-line, M. *Ibrand* croſſed the mouth of the river *Wagga*, which falls down from the mountains of *Trugan*, and empties itſelf into the *Oby*, to the north-weſt, below *Narum*, a ſmall city, where he arrived on the 24th of *Auguſt*. This city ſtands on the river ſide, in a fine country, and is defended by a citadel with a good garriſon of *Coſſacks*.

Deſcription of the *Oſtiacks*.

The banks of the *Oby* are inhabited by a people called *Oſtiacks*, who worſhip idols; though at the ſame time, they acknowledge there is a God in heaven, but pay him no adoration. They have idols of wood, and idols of earth, in human form, which they faſhion with their own hands, and which ſuch of them as can afford it, clothe in ſilk, after the manner of *Ruſſian* habits. Theſe idols ſtand in their cabins, which are of the bark of trees, ſewed together with the guts of deer, and have, on one ſide of them, bundles of hair, and a little bucket full of a ſort broth of which they give them ſome every day, in a ſpoon made on purpoſe, and which always runs down the corners of their mouths, and makes them very naſty.

naſty. When they worſhip their idols, or pray to them, they ſtand upright, and make ſtrong motions with the head, without bowing the body at all, and keep a noiſe like thoſe who call dogs. They have neither temples nor prieſts.

The *Oſtiacks* marry as many wives as they can maintain, and make no ſcruple to wed with their neareſt relations. When one of them is jealous of his wife, he cuts off ſome hair from the belly of a bear, and carries it to the perſon he ſuſpects to be guilty with her; if he is innocent, he accepts it, but when he is guilty, he fairly owns it, and comes to an amicable agreement with the huſband for the price of his wife: nor dare they act otherways, perſuaded that if a man ſhould preſume to accept the hair when he is guilty, the bear from whom it was cut, would devour him in three days time. When their friends and relations die, they lament about the body for ſome days, without ceaſing, with their heads covered up, and on their knees, without ſeeing any body; and then they carry it to the grave upon poles. They are very poor, and in ſummer live in miſerable huts; but they might eaſily better their condition, the country about the *Oby* affording plenty of furs, and the river being ſtored with fiſh, eſpecially ſturgeon, twenty of which of the largeſt

geſt ſize, they will ſell for about three-pennyworth of tobacco: but they are too lazy to work, and ſeek only for what may ſerve for a miſerable ſubſiſtence in the winter.

They hardly eat any thing but fiſh when they travel, and eſpecially when they are fiſhing. They are of a middling ſtature, with hair either fair or red, and broad flat faces and noſes. They are not at all inclined to war, and know nothing of the uſe of arms; though they have both bows and arrows for hunting, but are not at all dexterous with them. They cover themſelves with the ſkins of certain fiſh, and particularly with that of the ſturgeon, and have no manner of linen. Their ſtockings and ſhoes are all of a piece, and over all they wear a ſhort kind of looſe waiſtcoat, to which is faſtened a kind of cap, that they pull over their heads when it rains. Their ſhoes which are alſo of fiſh-ſkin, are not water-proof, ſo that they are always wet ſhod. They undergo all the rigours of a moſt dreadful cold upon the water, without any ſeeming pain, and clothed no otherways than above-mentioned, except the winter prove very hard indeed, and then they put on two looſe waiſtcoats: but when this happens, it is a kind of æra with them, and they will aſk one another if they remember

member the winter when they wore two waiſtcoats? They wear but one when they hunt in the winter, and never cover their breaſts, thinking they ſhall ſufficiently heat themſelves, with running up and down upon the ſnow, with their ſledge ſhoes. When they happen to be overtaken with an extraordinary froſt, that they are unable to withſtand, they ſtrip themſelves as faſt as they can, and bury themſelves deep in the ſnow, that they may die the ſooner, and with leſs pain. The women are dreſſed much after the ſame faſhion with the men.

Their chief diverſion is hunting the bear, upon which they go in companies, but no otherways armed than with a ſort of ſharp knife, made faſt to the end of a ſtaff, about ſix feet long. When they have killed a bear, they cut off his head, and hanging it up to a tree, they run about it, and ſeem to pay it great honours.

They have petty princes among them, one of which came on board to ſee M. *Ilbrand*. This man was appointed over ſome hundred cabins, and gathered the tribute theſe people are obliged to pay his Czarian majeſty's woywodes. He came with all his train; brought him a preſent of freſh fiſh, and returned highly pleaſed with an exchange of brandy and tobacco. He came a ſecond time, and invited M. *Ilbrand* to his

his palace, who, out of curiosity, accepting his invitation, and going thither, was received by the Prince himself, and conducted into his house, which was made of the barks of trees, like the other cabins, but not extremely well sewed together. The *Moscovite* minister here saw four of the Prince's wives, the youngest of which had on a red cloth petticoat, with a great deal of coral and glass about her neck and waist, as also the tresses of her hair, which hung down on each side, and upon her shoulders: she had great rings or buckles in her ears, from whence hung strings of coral beads. These ladies, each of them offered him a little tub made of bark, full of dried fish, and the youngest a tub of sturgeon, yellow as gold itself: he, in return, regaled them with brandy and tobacco, which are great delicacies with them. This cabin had no other furniture than some cradles and trunks made of bark, in which were their beds, full of wood-dust, as soft as down itself. The cradles were at the end of the cabin, full of naked children, and the fire was in the midst. There were no kitchen utensils, save one copper kettle, and some others of bark, which they can never use, but when there is no flame.

When these people smoke, to which both men and women are very much addicted, they

they take a mouthful of water, and ſwallow the ſmoke of the tobacco with it. This has ſuch an effect upon them, that they fall down, and ly upon the ground for ſome time inſenſible, with their eyes open, and foaming at the mouth, like thoſe in the falling ſickneſs; ſome of them even die in this condition; ſometimes they fall into the river, or into the fire, and there come to a miſerable end; and ſometimes they are ſuffocated to death with this ſmoke.

Their boats are made of the bark of trees, and the timber and frame-work within of very ſlight pieces of wood. They are two or three fathoms in length, and not above an ell broad; and yet they make a ſhift to live out in very bad weather. In winter theſe *Oſtiacks* live under ground, with a hole at the top of their caves for the ſmoke to go out. When it ſnows whilſt they ſleep by the fire, and they find one half of their body covered with ſnow, when they awake, they turn themſelves with that next to the fire, and feel no inconvenience by it.

M. *Ilbrand* now left the *Oby*, and arrived on the 1ſt of *September*, at the town of *Keetſkoi*, on the *Keta*, which falls northweſt into the *Oby*. On the 28th he came to St. *Sergius*; on the 3d of *October*, to the village of *Worozeikin*, and on the 7th

happily arrived at *Makoſkoi*, after many inconveniencies on the *Keta*, and ſuffering greatly from the want of proviſions. He reſolved now to expoſe himſelf no longer to the perils of the water, but to perform the reſt of his journey by land. Having travelled ſixteen leagues, upon the 12th of *October*, he came to *Jenizeſkoi*, where he ſtaid ſome time, to repoſe himſelf, and to wait for the winter ſeaſon being ſettled, that he might continue his journey in a ſledge. In the mean time he made preparations for every thing he wanted, and had leiſure enough to examine what was remarkable in the city. It takes its name from the river *Jeniſia*, which ariſing from the ſouth, croſſes the *Kalmuc* mountains, and holds on almoſt in a ſtrait line to the northward, till it diſembogues itſelf into the icy ſea of *Tartary*. The city of *Jenizeſkoi* is indifferently large, well fortified, and well peopled. There is great plenty of corn, butcher's meat, and poultry. Its juriſdiction extends over a great number of the heathen *Tungutes*, who inhabit along the *Jeniſia* and the *Tunguſka*. They pay their tribute to the Czar in all ſorts of furs. The cold is ſo intenſe here, that the trees bear no fruit.

City of *Jenizeſkoi*.

The envoy departing from *Jenizeſkoi*, arrived on the 20th of *January* 1693, at the iſland

iſland of *Ribnoi*, which ſtands in the middle of the river *Tunguſka*, and abounds in fiſh, eſpecially pike and ſturgeon, of an extraordinary ſize. It is almoſt wholly inhabited by *Ruſſians*. Upon the 25th he arrived at *Kinskoi*, upon the river *Ilni*, which riſes to the ſouth-ſouth-weſt, and diſcharges itſelf into the *Tunguska*, north-north-weſt. At ſome days journey from hence, is the great cataract or fall of water of *Shamanskoi*. The fall of this torrent is half a league in extent; the ſides are hills of rock, and all the bottom is rock: it is terrible to behold, and makes a moſt frightful noiſe as it falls among the rocks, ſome of which appear above water, and ſome are concealed under it. When the air is ſtill it may be heard at the diſtance of three * *German* leagues. The veſſels wherewith they navigate up this torrent, are often ſix or ſeven days in getting up, although they are quite light, and drawn up by capſtons, windlaſſes, anchors, and men. Sometimes it happens that they work a whole day in places where the water is low, and the rocks are high, and do not gain the length of the veſſel, which is all that time in great danger. They unlade their veſſels to go down, as well as to go up the torrent, and carry the goods by land, till they have paſſed the danger. The

Cataract of *Shamanſkoi*.

* A *German* league is about five *Engliſh* miles.

fall is ſo precipitate, that they are ſeldom above twelve minutes in going down. There are but few of the *Ruſſians* or the *Tunguſes* who are quite dexterous at this navigation, tho' they are provided with a rudder both fore and aft, and tho' they have oars ſhipped on each ſide. The ſteerſman directs the men at the oars with the motion of a handkerchief, the noiſe being ſo rude and boiſterous, as to drown the ſound of the voice; and beſides this, they take care to have their veſſel covered up, to prevent their ſhipping the water that goes over them. However, there happens every year ſome ſad accident or other for want of ſkillful pilots, who run upon the rocks, in which caſe there is no reſource, and they are either ſwallowed up by the furious torrent, or inevitably daſhed to pieces againſt the rock: nor is it eaſy to recover the dead bodies of thoſe ſo loſt; tho' on the ſhore are many croſſes erected at the places where ſuch wrecks have happened, and where the people have been buried.

Upon the 1ſt of *February* the envoy arrived at the fortreſs of *Buratſkoi*, upon the river *Angara*, which falls into the lake of *Baikal*, and is inhabited by a people that are heathens, called *Burates*.

Upon the 12th he arrived at *Bulaganſkoi*; where alſo the vales and low countries

tries are inhabited by the *Burates*, a people rich in cattle. Their cabins are low, made of wood, and covered with earth; they light their fire in the middle, and the ſmoke goes out of a hole on the top of the building. They have no notion of agriculture, or of fruit-grounds or gardens; and their villages are for the moſt part, on the ſides of rivers, whence they are not uſed to remove like the *Tungutes*, and other of the heathens. On one ſide of their doors they have ſtakes planted in the ground, upon which they impale goats or ſheep, and faſten thereto alſo the ſkins of horſes. *Burates.*

In the ſpring they meet together in great numbers on horſeback, to hunt the ſtag, the rein-deer, and other wild beaſts, which they call *Ablavo*. When they have ſight of them at a diſtance, they divide themſelves into troops, and ſurround them; then they drive them together into a cloſe body by degrees, and in this manner frequently hedge in ſome hundreds of them, which they ſhoot with their arrows when they are within reach; ſo that few of them eſcape, every ſportſman being provided with thirty arrows. The country ſwarms with fallow-deer, and wild ſheep, which upon the mountains are met with by thouſands.

The people have no notion of money in coin; but if you want oxen or camels to travel

travel with to *China*, they will truck with you for pale ſables, pewter or copper baſons, red cloths of *Hamburgh*, otter-ſkins, ſilks of *Perſia* of all colours, and gold and ſilver in ingots. In this manner you may buy an ox, which dreſſed would weigh from eight hundred to a thouſand pounds, for the value of four or five rubles; and a camel for the value of ten or a dozen. The inhabitants of this country, as well men as women, are robuſt and large of ſtature; have a face handſome enough in their way, and ſomewhat reſembling the *Tartars* of *China*. In winter-time both the one and the other wear gowns of ſheep-ſkins, with a great girdle, and a cap, called *Malachaven*, which comes over their ears; and in ſummer they wear gowns of an ugly ſort of red cloth. They are never waſhed but upon the day that they come into the world; they never pare their nails, and have ſcarce the appearance of human creatures.

The men wear a beard under their chin, but pluck out all the reſt; the ſeams of their clothes are adorned with furs; their caps are of fox-ſkins; their gowns of a blue cotton ſtuff, platted in the middle, and their boots are of ſkins with their hair outermoſt. The women wear coral-rings, and pieces of money in the treſſes of their hair; and the hair

hair of the girls or maidens is in ſnakes, that they look like furies.

The other women have their hair falling down on each ſide, and adorned with all ſorts of figures in pewter: when they die, they bury them with their beſt clothes, and a bow and arrows.

Their only worſhip is to make certain motions of the head, at particular times of the year, to the goats and ſheep that are impaled at their doors. They pay the ſame honour to the ſun and moon, but upon their knees, without ſaying a word, or uſing any ſort of verbal invocation. They have prieſts, whom they put to death whenever they pleaſe, and then bury them with money and clothes, that they may go before and pray for them.

When they are under a neceſſity of taking an oath among themſelves, they repair to the lake of *Baikal*, upon a high mountain, which is ſacred with them, and which they can reach in two days journey: they are perſuaded that they ſhould never come down again alive, if they take a falſe oath. This mountain has for a great number of years been in high veneration with them, and they make frequent offerings of cattle thereon.

The envoy, M. *Ilbrand*, having made ſome ſtay among theſe people, went to *Jekutſkoi*,

kutskoi, upon the river *Angara*, which riſes from the lake of *Baikal*, about eight leagues off. This town is flanked with good towers; its ſuburbs are very large, and corn, ſalt, butcher's meat, and fiſh, are ſo cheap there, that they do not give above ſeven pence for an hundred weight of barley. The country about is very fertile, and abounds in grain as far as *Wergolenskoi*, which is only ſome leagues diſtant. The *Ruſſians* in theſe parts have ſome hundred villages, and are very careful to cultivate the land.

M. *Ilbrand* having reſted himſelf ſome time at *Jekutskoi*, departed, on the firſt of *May*, in a ſledge, and croſſed the country to the lake of *Baikal*, where he arrived upon the 10th, and found it ſtill frozen over. This lake is about ſix *German* leagues in breadth, and forty in length, and the ice upon it two *Dutch* ells in thickneſs.

The only river that goes out of this lake is the *Angara*, which runs to the north-north-weſt; but there are ſeveral that fall into it, the chief of which is the *Silinga*, which riſes to the ſouthward in the country of the *Mongales*; beſides ſome brooks and rills that fall into it from the rocks; nor is it without ſome iſlands. Its borders and the country about, are inhabited by *Burates*, *Mongales*, and *Onkotes*, and produce very fine

fine black ſables; beſides that, they here take a creature called *Kaberdiner*.

Upon the 14th of *May*, he arrived at the caſtle of *Tanzinskoi*, where was a good garriſon of *Coſſacks* to make head againſt the incurſions of the *Mongales*, who inhabit upon the frontiers of that country. Upon the 19th he arrived at *Udinskoi*, a town ſeated upon a hill, upon the foot of which, moſt of the inhabitants take up their abode, under the cannon of that fortreſs, along the river *Uda*, which falls into the *Kilinga*, a quarter of a league below the town; in which there is alſo a good garriſon of *Ruſſian Coſſacks* to watch the motion of the *Mongales*.

This town, which is the key of the province of *Dauria*, is very much expoſed, even in the ſummer time, to the ravages of the *Mongales*, who often carry off horſes as they feed in the meadows. The land which is very mountainous, is fit for no ſort of tillage, tho' it abounds in cabbages, carrots, turnips, and ſuch-like vegetable productions; but no trees have as yet been planted there.

The envoy was forced to ſtay here ſome time for camels and horſes; then went by land to the river *Ona*, which comes from the north-north-weſt, and falls into the *Uda*.

Upon the 29th, he arrived at *Jarauna*, and was raviſhed to meet with towns again, after having croſſed a deſart country full of high rocks; an irkſome journey, during which he ſaw no ſoul from the time he left *Udinskoi*. This fortreſs is provided with a good garriſon of *Coſſacks;* and here alſo are many *Ruſſians*, who ſubſiſt by the ſale of ſables. The *Konni Tunguſi*, the heathens who inhabit along the river *Tunguski* and *Angara*, ſpread all over this country, and ſpeak a language peculiar to themſelves. When they die they are buried with their clothes, and their arrows, and ſtones are put over their graves; then they plant a ſtake, to which the beſt horſe of the deceaſed is tied, and there ſacrificed. They live by the ſale of ſable furs, which are perfectly fine in this country, and of an admirable black. Here alſo are fine luxes, and a ſort of ſquirrels of a black grey, which the *Chineſe* were formerly wont to carry off with them. To the north of this fortreſs are three ſmall lakes, not far from each other, which together, are two leagues in circumference, and abound with pike, carp, perch, and the like. From hence are two ways, which lead to *Zitinskoi* or *Plabitſcha*. The envoy ſent part of his ſervants by one of them, and took the other himſelf, with a train of fourteen followers, to *Telimta*, in which

which fortreſs are numbers of *Ruſſians*, who, in the winter-ſeaſon, take ſables, equal to the very fineſt in *Siberia*, or the province of *Dauria*.

Here he paſſed a night; and a *Knez*, or Prince of the *Tunguſes*, called *Lilulka*, came to ſee him. This Lord had his hair done up with leather, and ſo very long that it went three times round about his ſhoulders; and when let looſe, meaſured four *Dutch* ells in length. He had a ſon with him but of ſix years old, whoſe hair, which hung on his ſhoulders, was an ell in length. Theſe *Tunguſes* live in great numbers upon the hills and mountains of this country, and are generally rich, which proceeds from their large dealings in ſables.

For two days together they went over ſtony mountains, very lofty, to the north-weſt and ſouth-eaſt. The river *Konela*, which afterwards aſſumes the name of *Wittim*, riſes there to the northward; runs away to the north-eaſt, and falls into the *Lena*, and from thence into the icy or northern ſea. The *Zitta* commences from the other ſide of the mountains, half a league from thence, and falls into the *Ingodda*, or *Amur*, and from thence into the eaſtern ocean.

Upon the 15th of *June*, M. *Ilbrand* arrived at *Plodbitſcha*, as the caravan with his

ſervants did the day before, having ſuffered greatly in the way from the *Tunguſes*, who had ſet fire to the dry graſs; ſo that the cattle being in want of forage, they had been obliged to go into the mountains for it at the diſtance of a league.

He was forced to ſtay ſome days at *Plodbitſcha*, upon the *Zitta*, to reſt him a little, and to get ready ſome rafts, by which he was to fall down the rivers *Ingodda* and *Schilka* to *Nerzinskoi*; for the waters were ſo low, that there was no ſuch thing as going in boats, nor was it quite ſafe to go upon rafts in the rocky places, where two of them were broke: they were laden with part of the envoy's equipage; but with ſome trouble it was all ſaved.

When every thing was ready, he ſent his camels and other beaſts of burthen before him, towards *Nerzinſkoi*, by the way of the mountains, and following them himſelf, reached the river *Onon* upon the 19th. This river riſes from the fens of *Mongal*, and to the north-eaſt throws itſelf into the *Ingodda*, where having united their ſtreams, they go away together by the name of *Schilka*. Their waters are very white, and their borders are inhabited by ſeveral hoards of the *Mongales*, who commit frequent ravages on the other ſide of the *Schilka*, quite to *Nerzinſkoi*. But they are not always attended

attended with the beſt luck upon theſe occaſions; they are not ſeldom repulſed, and when any of them happen to be taken, they are ſure to be executed as common robbers. The *Ruſſian Coſſacks* alſo ſcour the country all along the *Onon*, to take vengeance on them, and ſpare not one that comes in their way.

Upon the 20th, he happily arrived at *Nerzinſkoi*, a town upon the *Nerza*, which comes from the north-north-eaſt, and diſcharges itſelf into the *Schilka*, a quarter of a league from this fortreſs, whoſe works are not bad, and provided with a great number of braſs artillery, as well as with a good garriſon of *Daurian Coſſacks*, who ſerve both on foot and on horſeback. This place though ſurrounded with high hills, does not want for graſs grounds to feed its camels, horſes and other cattle. And here and there upon the hills, are patches of land fit for tillage, grazing, and fiſhing, The places about this town and hill produce all ſorts of flowers and plants; baſtard rhubarb, or *Rapontica*, of extraordinary ſize; fine white and yellow lillies; red and white pionies of a charming ſcent, and of ſeveral ſorts; roſemary, thyme, ſweet marjoram, lavender, beſides many odoriferous plants unknown in *Europe;* but they have no ſort of fruit here except gooſeberries. The heathens,

heathens, who have a long time been in this country, and who are under the dominion of the Czar of *Moſcovy*, are of two ſorts; the *Konni Tunguſi*, and the *Olenni Tunguſi*. The firſt are obliged to appear on horſeback at the firſt orders of the Woywode, or Governor of *Nerzinſkoi*, or when the borders are infeſted by the *Tartars*; and the *Olenni* are obliged to ſerve on foot, and armed in the town when occaſion requires. The chief of the *Konni Tunguſi*, when M. *Ilbrand* was there, was a *Knez* called *Paul Petrowitz Gantimur*, or in their language, *Cantana Gantimur*. He was pretty far advanced in years, and of the country of *Nieuheu*, where he had been a *Taiſcha*, under the dominion of the King of *China*; but falling into diſgrace with that Prince, who depoſed him, he removed into *Dauria*, with his hoards or vaſſals, and embracing the Chriſtian faith of the *Greek* church, threw himſelf under the protection of the Czar. This Prince could bring three thouſand men into the field in twenty-four hours time, all well mounted, and good ſoldiers, provided with bows and arrows. It often happens that a ſcore or two of this people ſhall drive three or four hundred of the *Mongal Tartars* before them.

Their worſhip is the ſame with that of the inhabitants of *Dauria*, from whom they pretend

pretend to be deſcended, and differ in no point from that of *Tartary*, quite to the frontiers of the *Mongales*. The women are here robuſt, with broad faces, like the men; are, when they are on horſeback, armed like them with bow and arrow, which they uſe with great dexterity, even when young maidens: nor does their dreſs differ from that of the men. Water is their common drink; but thoſe who have wherewithal drink tea, which they call *Kara'tza*, or *black-tea*, becauſe it tinctures the water with black inſtead of green. They boil it in mares milk, and a little water, to which they add ſome greaſe or butter. They have alſo a kind of diſtilled liquor, which they call *Kunen* or *Arak*, extracted from mares milk, they ſtir it every hour for one night, and then having put it in an earthen-pot well covered, and luted with paſte, diſtill it over a fire. This is to be twice repeated before the liquor is fit to drink, and then it becomes as ſtrong and clear as a malt ſpirit, and fuddles as eaſily.

Theſe heathens hunt in the ſpring time, and lay in their ſtore of veniſon after the manner of the *Burates*, drying it as they do in the ſun. Their bread they make of the dried roots of yellow lillies, which they call *Sarana*, and which they apply to ſeveral other uſes. They are very adroit at ſhooting fiſh in

in the water with their arrows, though at the diſtance of fifteen or ſixteen fathoms.

When theſe people are under a neceſſity to take an oath to purge themſelves of any crime, they open the vein of a dog on the left ſide, from whence the perſon that would clear himſelf ſucks the blood, till the creature falls down dead by the emptying of the blood veſſels. The envoy ſaw an example of this at *Nerzinskoi*, where one of the *Tungutes* had accuſed another of having bewitched ſome of his companions, who were dead by his practices upon them; but the party accuſed acquitted himſelf by ſubmiting to the fore-mentioned trial, and his accuſer was puniſhed in his ſtead.

Upon the 3d of *Auguſt*, M. *Ilbrand* arrived at *Argunskoi*, the laſt fortreſs belonging to their Czarian majeſties on that ſide. It ſtands upon the river *Argun*; which riſing to the ſouth-eaſtward, falls into the *Amur*, and ſerves for a common boundary between the dominions of *Moſcovy*, and thoſe of the King of *China*.

END of the Second VOLUME.

INDEX.

[N. B. *The numerals* (I. II.) *refer to the Volume, and the figures to the Page.*]

A

ALEXANDER, Czar, builds the city of *Moſcow* I. 13

Alexis, Czar, ſucceeds *Michael Theodorowich* I. 56. Great diſorders in his minority *ib.* Baniſhes the *Engliſh* merchants from an abhorrence of *Oliver Cromwel's* rebellion 61. A new impoſtor riſes up in his reign, who is taken and beheaded 62. Takes *Smolenſko*, *Kiow* and *Cherniſkow*, from the *Poles* ib. The *Coſſacks* come under his protection 63. His marriage and iſſue *ib.* By his Empreſs *Natalia Karilowna*, has the Emperor *Peter* the Great 64. Gets a fifth impoſtor delivered up to him 65. Undertakes the defence of *Poland* 66—Dies *ib.*

Alexis, Czarowich, ſon of *Peter* the Great born I. 92. Is married to a Princeſs of *Wolfenbuttle* 143. Has a daughter born II. 62. His ſon Prince *Peter* born 71. His wife dies *ib.* Makes an elopement from St. *Petersburgh* 91. Is made priſoner on his return to *Moſcow* 102. *See* the whole procedure againſt him, from 96 to 143. His death *ib.* His accomplices puniſhed 144. His character 286

Allart, General, has the direction of the ſiege of *Narva* I. 146

Altena burnt II. 48

Anne, Queen of *England*, writes to Czar *Peter* excuſing the harſh treatment his Ambaſſador had met with I. 288. Makes a law in favour of foreign miniſters *ib.*

Anna, niece to *Peter* the Great, is married to the Duke of *Courland* I. 143

Archangel, a fort built there by *Peter* the Great I. 94. Great loſs by a ſtorm and fire at it 103

Aſoph, deſcription of I. 97. Is beſieged by *Peter* the Great 99. The garriſon repulſes the *Ruſſians* at two attacks 102. The ſiege raiſed *ib.* Is again beſieged 105. Surrenders 109

Aſtracan, a revolt there I. 211. The rebels cut the throats of all foreigners 259. Is thought to be fomented by the *Strelitzes*, ib. The ringleaders puniſhed *ib.*

Areſkin, Dr. the Czar's phyſician dies II. 170. His character 171

Appraxin, High-admiral, beſieges *Wiburgh* I. 233; which he is obliged to raiſe *ib.* Beſieges *Wiburgh* again II. 17. Cauſes arreſt the garriſon after they had ſurrendered and marched out *ib.*

Beats the *Swedes* at *Allandt* 58. Commands in the deſcent on *Sweden*, and does vaſt miſchief 162. Is found guilty of malad-miniſtration, and fined 174. Some account of his life and character 284.

Ambaſſador from the *Ottoman Porte*, makes his publick entry into *Moſcow* I. 193. Goes to *Narva* with the Czar 194. His ſaying there to Prince *Menzekoff* 195. Takes his audience of leave *ib.*

Ankerſteern, Admiral, goes to attack the *Ruſſian* fleet I. 197. Is forced to retire with loſs *ib.* Makes another unſucceſsful attempt on *Cronſtat* 205.

Auguſtus, King of *Poland*, takes poſſeſſion of *Radzivelof* and *Birzen* I. 162. Meets with Czar *Peter* ib. Undertakes to furniſh the Czar with troops 163. Is defeated at *Cletchoff* by the King of *Sweden* 168. Endeavours to procure a peace 173. Sends the Counteſs of *Koningsmark* to the King of *Sweden* ib. Is dethroned by the confederacy of *Warſaw* 195. Leaves *Dreſden* incog. 207. Goes to *Grodno* 208. Meets with the Czar *ib.* Inſtitutes the order of the white eagle, which he confers on ſome of the *Ruſſian* generals *ib.* He, together with Marſhal *Ogilvie*, gets the command of the army at *Grodno* 211. Orders all the troops in the neighbouring towns to march to *Grodno* 212. Entrenches himſelf ſtrongly *ib.* Marches into *Poland* 218. Gives up all hopes of ſucceſs 222. Cauſes arreſt *Patcul* 223. Is averſe to engage the *Swediſh* army 226. Sends private intelligence to General *Marderfelt* 227. Commands at the battle of *Caliſh*, where the *Swedes* are defeated *ib.* Makes a diſhonourable peace with the King of *Sweden* at *Altranſtadt* 230. His condition not bettered by it 231 His letter to King *Staniſlaus* ib. Publiſhes a declaration after the battle of *Pultawa* II. 1. Returns to *Poland* to take poſſeſſion of the crown 2. Meets with the Czar at *Thorn* 3. Is in great difficulties 72.

B

Baths much uſed in *Ruſſia* I. 7

Bagnios, women in *Ruſſia* brought to bed in them *ib.*

Baſil, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, ſends biſhops to the *Ruſſians* I. 10

Baſil, Czar of *Ruſſia*, retakes the towns ſeized from his father I. 14

Baſil II. ſucceeds *Gregory* ib. His eyes put out 15

Baſil III. ſucceeds *John* I. 15. Conquers the kingdom of *Caſan* 16. Is attacked by the Cham of *Tartary*, and defeated 17. Retires to *Novogrod* 18. Concludes a ſhameful peace *ib.* Gets the title of Emperor from *Maximilian* I. Emp. of *Rome* 20

Berkley, an *Engliſh* gentleman, ſent to the iſle of *Allandt* with letters from Lord *Carteret* to General *Bruce* II. 164

Beſtucheff,

Beſtucheff, the Czar's miniſter, ordered to leave the court of *Britain* II. 186

Boras Gadenow, poiſons Czar *Theodore* I. 37. Retires into a convent 38. Accepts of the crown *ib.* Endeavours to have *Demetrius* delivered up 41. His diſmal ſtate 42. At firſt ſucceſsful againſt *Demetrius* 43. Totally overthrown *ib.* His death *ib.*

Bower, General, makes his eſcape from *Narva* I. 145. Surprizes *Mittau* 198. Croſſes the *Boriſthenes* in purſuit of the King of *Sweden* 305. Comes up to the river *Bog* juſt after the King had paſſed it *ib.* Takes ſome hundreds of his company priſoners *ib.* Returns to *Pultawa* 306. Attacks and beats General *Steinbock* II. 49

Bolawin, Colonel, his ſedition and death I. 266

Brandenburgh, elector of, ſends *Peter* the Great engineers, *&c.* I. 105. Receives the Czar at *Koningsberg* with great ſtate 113

Bremen and *Verden* given up to *Hanover* for the payment of a million of crowns, and a yearly ſubſidy of 300,000 crowns to *Sweden* II. 158

Britain, court of, jealous of the *Ruſſians* and *Swedes*, ſends perſons to pry into their conduct II. 153

Bruce, General, his anſwer to Lord *Carteret*'s letter II. 165. Is ſent one of the Czar's plenipotentiaries to the treaty of *Nieſtadt* 200

C

Caſan is conquered by *Baſil* III. I. 16. The inhabitants beg aſſiſtance from the Cham of *Tartary* ib.

Catharine, niece to *Peter* the Great is married to the Duke of *Mechlenburgh* I. 143

Caliſh, battle of, I. 227. The *Swedes* are defeated 228. Liſt of the killed, wounded and priſoners *ib.*

Cantamir, Hoſpodar of *Wallachia*, flies into *Ruſſia* II. 33

Cajanberg ſurrenders to Prince *Galitzen* II. 74

Chambers, Major-general, inſtalled knight of St. *Andrew* I. 192

Cham of the *Usbeck Tartars* becomes the Czar's vaſſal II. 61

Chitſtoy, the Czar's ambaſſador at the *Porte* confined in the ſeven towers II. 22

Croſs, kiſſing it, the uſual way of tendering an oath in *Ruſſia* I. 71

Croy, Duke of, has the direction of one of the attacks at the ſiege of *Narva* I. 148. Gets the command of the army in the Czar's abſence 149. Gives himſelf up priſoner of war to the King of *Sweden* 150. His advice before the *Swedes* came up 154

Cronſtat built I. 171. The manner the foundations were laid *ib.* Number of horſes and men deſtroyed in carrying materials for it *ib.* Deſcription of the harbour, *&c.* II. 296

Cracow, deſcription of the ſalt mines there II. 10

Crown general of *Poland*, leaves

the confederacy of *Warſaw* and joins that of *Sandomir* I. 196. Arrives at *Grodno* with ſeveral other ſenators 209. Commands the *Poliſh* troops at *Caliſh* 227. Preſents a letter from Czar *Peter* to the council at *Limberg* 238. Thunders out univerſalias againſt *Staniſlaus*'s adherents 264, Raiſes contributions on friend and foe *ib.*

Courland, the plague rages there II. 21

Cuſtom, a barbarous one in *Ruſſia* I. 91

Czarina, *Catharine*, very inſtrumental in bringing about the peace with the *Turks* at the *Pruth* II. 33. Brought to bed of a Princeſs at *Riga* 51; of another at St. *Petersburgh* 59; of a Prince 81. Goes to *Holland* to the Czar 82. Is crowned Empreſs 257. Some account of her life *ib.* Is appointed the Czar's ſucceſſor in the empire 261

D

Daniel, Czar, builds the citadel of *Moſcow* I. 13

Dantzick declares for *Staniſlaus* I. 246. Prepares to oppoſe General *Renn* 247

Demetrius, Czar, has wars with the *Tartars* I 13

Demetrius, Prince, murdered by his father *John Baſiliwick* II. I. 34. Is perſonated by *Griſka Utropeca* 39 Again perſonated by another impoſtor 49. Perſonated by a third impoſtor 56

Derpt beſieged I. 180. The commandant, Col. *Skyte*, cauſes ſet the ſuburbs on fire 181. Journal of the ſiege 183. Surrenders 186. The fortifications demoliſhed 264

Divan, conſults about the King of *Sweden*'s affairs II. 24

Dolgoruky, Prince *James*, forces the *Turks* to retire I. 131. His meſſage to General *Weid* at *Narva* 152. Is tried and found guilty of mal-adminiſtrations II. 174. Fined 175.

Dolgoruky, Prince *Gregory*, is ſent miniſter from the Czar to the council at *Limberg* I. 237. Prevails on the *Poles* to hold a congreſs at *Lublin* II. 81. It meets, but is tranſported to *Warſaw;* when they conclude a peace under the guarantee of the Czar *ib.* Receives a letter from Sir *John Norris* 187. His anſwer 188

E

Elbing taken by ſurprize II. 9

Emperor of *Ruſſia*, an abſolute Prince I. 4. 7. Has a monopoly of all the rich furs *ib.* The uſual manner of his chuſing a wife 69. The indolent manner the Czars uſed to live in 83. Has ſeveral large eſtates in *Ruſſia* 173. His great revenues from the breweries, which have the ſole privilege of vending malt liquors and ſpirits 260.

Emperor of *Germany*, —— aſſiſts *Peter* the Great with engineers, *&c.* I. 105. Gives him an extraordinary entertainment at *Vienna* 119

Eudoxia Theodorowna Lapachin is married to *Peter* the Great I. 89. Offends the Czar by her remonſtrances 135. Is put into a convent 136. Her life and character II. 280.

G

Galitzen, Baſil, at the head of affairs during Czar *Peter*'s nonage I. 86. Takes the field againſt the *Turks* ib. is forced to retreat 87. Throws the blame on *Ivan Samuelowich*, whom he baniſhes, and beheads his ſon *ib.* Attacks the *Turks* a ſecond time without ſucceſs 89. Forms a deſign of cutting off Czar *Peter* ib. Throws himſelf at the Czar's feet, and pretends innocence 91. Is baniſhed *ib.*

Galitzen, Prince, enters a proteſtation againſt King *Auguſtus* for ſeizing General *Patcul* I. 223. Defeats ſix regiments of *Swedes* at *Czarnapatta* 271. Is ſent to *Poland* 289. Is recalled to his command of the guards 291. Is diſpatched in purſuit of the *Swedes* at *Pultawa* 302. Attacks and beats *Arnfelt* II. 56. Surpriſes *Ulla* 70. Beats the *Swediſh* fleet 191. Commits great depredations in *Lapland* 192. Made Hettman or General of the *Ukraine Coſſacks* 254. Some account of him 285

Geriſlaus, Czar, gets the better of all his brethren I 11

Geriſlaus II. ſucceeds his brother *George* I. 12

George I. King of *Great Britain*, his anſwer to the Czar's memorial as elector of *Hanover* II. 167. His anſwer as King of *Britain* 169. His mediation betwixt *Peter* the Great and *Sweden* rejected 189

Gordon, General *Patrick*, made Governor of *Shegreen* I. 66. Ill aſſiſted by Prince *Romodanoſky* 67, Makes his way through the enemy in an extraordinary manner *ib.* His conduct much approved of *ib.* Aſſiſts General *Lefort* at the ſiege of *Aſoph* 100. His advice not regarded 101. Propoſes a new way to carry on the attacks, which is ſucceſsful 107. Marches to the relief of *Tavan* 115. Returns to *Moſcow* 116. Is the chief means of preſerving the government from being overturned 123. Marches againſt the *Strelitzes* ib. Adviſes them as a friend 124. At laſt uſes force and overpowers them 128. His death 137. His character *ib*

Gordon, General *Alexander*, commands a party of *Coſſacks* at *Aſoph* I. 115. Is at pains to train his men 140. Gets a thouſand more added to his regiment *ib.* Gets orders to march to *Novogrod* 144. Is at the ſiege of *Narva* under Prince *Irubetſkoy*'s command *ib* Croſſes the river with a detachment, and poſts himſelf within cannon ſhot of the town 145. A party from the garriſon attack him *ib.* Adviſes to build a fort at *Pihagie* 147. Is relieved from his long confinement in *Sweden* 257. Attends on the Czar to St. *Petersburgh*

tersburgh ib. The Czar's converſation with him 258. Forces Prince *Wieſnowitſky* to retire from place to place 264. Is made Major-general *ib.* Is ordered to oppoſe the King of *Sweden*'s croſſing the *Diſna* 278. Comes up with the *Swedes* ib. Being ill ſupported, makes a good retreat 279. Is ſent to *Poland* to oppoſe *Staniſlaus* 289. Has the command of the infantry 291. Is ordered to the frontiers of *Hungary* II. 8. Reduces Prince *Lubomirſky*, &c. *ib.* Is ordered into *Royal Pruſſia* 16

Gordon, Count *James*, wounded at the ſiege of *Notteburgh* I. 169. Receives a thouſand rubles as a gratification from Czar *Peter* ib.

Golowin, General, commands one of the diviſions at the ſiege of *Aſoph* I. 100

Goltz, General, marches with a detachment againſt *Staniſlaus* 289. Defeats the *Poles* 290. Purſues them into *Great Poland* 291. On their diſperſing he marches back into *Black Ruſſia* 311. Is arreſted by the Czar's orders II. 10. Carried priſoner to St. *Petersburgh* and tried by a court-martial 11. Is acquitted *ib. Menzekoff* moves to have him tried a ſecond time *ib.* The Czar preſents him with a ſword, and orders him to return to his command 12. He excuſes himſelf and quits the ſervice *ib.*

Gemaurthoff, battle of, I. 199. Liſt of the killed and wounded 201

Gortz, Baron, enters into a private treaty with the Czar II. 68. Is arreſted in *Holland* at the deſire of the *Britiſh* court, for carrying on an intrigue in favour of the Chevalier de St. *George* 83. Confers with the Czar on the ſtate of affairs 147. Is at great pains to bring about a peace 149. Plan betwixt him and Baron *Oſterman* 150. Is beheaded 155

Griſka Utropeca pretends to be Prince *Demetrius* I. 39. An account of him *ib.* His account of himſelf 40. Is credited and treated with great reſpect in *Poland* 41. Marries the Woywode of *Sandomir*'s daughter 42. Marches into *Ruſſia* ib. Overcomes *Boras Gadenow* 43. Is generally acknowledged *ib.* Marches to the capital, where he is crowned Emperor 44. Takes his ſuppoſed mother out of the convent 45. Goes into impolitick meaſures *ib.* Removes his *Poliſh* guards 46. Is murdered 48, His wife *Maria Anne* is intercepted by a ſecond falſe *Demetrius* 51

Grand Seignior, refuſes to deliver up the King of *Sweden* to Czar *Peter* I. 306. Threatens to renew the war with *Ruſſia* II. 36. New articles agreed to betwixt him and the Czar 37. Orders the Baſſa of *Bender* to convey the King of *Sweden* through *Poland* 40. Declares war againſt *Ruſſia* 46. Depoſes the prime Viſier, and impriſons the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſador *ib.* Wants the King of *Sweden* to leave *Turky* and

attack the Czar on another quarter 47; which he refuſing, he takes rough methods with him *ib.* Makes peace with *Ruſſia* 48

Grodno, Czar *Peter* goes thither I. 207; alſo King *Auguſtus* 208. A council of *Poliſh* ſenators meet there *ib.* The Crown-general with ſeveral more ſenators arrive 209. The ſubject of their conferences *ib.* Their iſſue and the alliance betwixt the Czar and the *Poles* 210. The King of *Sweden* forces the bridge 261

Gyllemberg, Count, arreſted for carrying on an intrigue in favour of the Chevalier de St. *George* II. 83

H

Hanover, elector of, gets *Bremen* and *Verden* delivered up to him II. 68

Heyn, General, quarrels with Pr. *Menzekoff*, and is ſent to *Siberia* II. 12

Holland, ſtates of, ſend *Peter* the Great gunners, *&c.* I. 105. Uſe their endeavours to incline the Czar to make peace with *Sweden* 161

Horn, Colonel, taken priſoner at *Stagriltz* I. 167. Is killed at *Gemaurthoff* 201

Horn, Baron, Governor of *Narva*, ſends for ſuccours to General *Slepinback* I. 181. His inſolent anſwer to Marſhal *Ogilvie*'s ſummons 188. Does all in his power to repair the breaches *ib.* Hides himſelf in a vault under ground 190. Is puniſhed for his cruelty 191. His daughters taken care of by the Czar *ib.*

Holſtein, Duke of, killed at the battle of *Cletchoff* I. 168.

Holowſin, battle of, I. 268. Liſt of the killed and wounded *ib.*

I

James I. of *England*, mediates a treaty betwixt the *Ruſſians* and *Swedes* I. 54

Javaſka, a *German* engineer, his treachery I. 100. Is broke on the wheel 110

Igor, ſecond ſovereign of *Ruſſia* I. 9. Is killed *ib.* His death revenged by Queen *Ogla* ib.

John Baſiliwick I. enlarges the dominions of *Ruſſia* I. 15. Builds *Ivanogrod* ib.

John Baſiliwick II. ſucceeds *Baſil* III. I. 20. Introduces foreign diſcipline into his army 21. Beſieges and takes *Caſan* ib. Conquers the kingdom of *Aſtracan* 22. Beſieges *Wiburgh* without ſucceſs 23. Takes *Narva*, *Nyen*, *Hayſon* and *Derpt* ib. alſo *Selin* and *Poloczk* 24. A conſpiracy formed againſt him, which he cruelly puniſhes 25. His army routed in *Poland* 26. Overcomes the *Turks* ib. His cruelties to the *Swedes* ib. The King of *Poland* ſucceſsful againſt him 28. Propoſes to acknowledge the Pope's ſupremacy 30. Kills his ſon 31. His exceſſive grief on that account *ib.* Makes peace with King *Stephen* 32. His death and character *ib.* His behaviour to the clergy 35.

Was contemporary with Queen *Elizabeth* ib. Nails the *French* ambaſſador's hat to his head 36

John, eldeſt ſon of *Alexis*, not capable to govern alone I. 71. Marries I. 84. His death and iſſue 104

John and *Peter* proclaimed Czars I. 71. Are crowned, and ſend ambaſſadors to *Sweden*, &c. 84. Conclude peace with *Germany* and *Sweden* I. 85. Send an army to the frontiers of *Poland* ib. Send ambaſſadors to *France* and *Spain* ib.

Jeffries, Mr., reſident from the *Britiſh* court at St. *Petersburgh* II. 153. Receives orders from his court to leave St. *Peterſburgh* 165

Ilbrand, Mr., ſent at the head of an embaſſy from Czar *Peter* to the Emperor of *China* I. 94. Arrives at the capital of *China*, and ſettles all matters in diſpute betwixt the two empires *ib.* A particular account of his journey and the places he paſſed thro' II. 322

Ingria falls into the hands of *Sweden* I. 54

Irubetſkoy, Prince *John*, inveſts *Narva* I. 144. Completes the lines of circumvallation and contravallation 146

Ivanogrod inveſted I. 147. Summoned by Marſhal *Ogilvie* 192. Surrenders 193. Articles of capitulation *ib.*

K

Kexholm ſurrenders to Czar *Peter* II. 20

Koningſmerk, Counteſs of, goes to the King of *Sweden*'s camp I. 173. Her ſaying on that occaſion 174

L

Lefort, General, commands one of the diviſions at the ſiege of *Aſoph* I. 100. Is aſſiſted by General *Patrick Gordon* ib. Gets the command of the fleet 105. His death 133. His character, *&c.* 134. Was thought to be an inſtrument in alienating the Czar's affection from his Empreſs 135

Levenhaupt, Count, is taken priſoner at *Stagriltz* I. 167. Beats the *Ruſſians* in *Courland* 195. Obliges Marſhal *Sheremetoff* to retire at *Gemaurthoff* 201. but retires the night after to *Riga* for fear of a ſecond attack 202. Marches to join the King of *Sweden* at *Mohelow* 270. Paſſes the *Boriſthenes* 273. Is attacked by the Czar 275. Marches off in the night leaving his ammunition, proviſions, *&c.* behind 276. Joins the King of *Sweden* with the remains of his army 277. Surrenders to Prince *Menzekoff* 303. Articles of his ſurrender 304.

Leſcher, Commodore, his deſperate action I. 180.

Limberg, Council of *Poliſh* ſenators there aſſembled, declare the throne vacant I. 237. Appoint a dyet to be held at *Lublin* 238. Their declaration to the Czar 242.

Lublin, dyet of, their proceedings

ings I. 252. Different views among the members 255

M

Marderfelt, General, has no regard to King *Auguſtus*'s intelligence I. 227. Is defeated at *Caliſh* 228. Is releaſed on his parole 229

Marlborough, Duke of, is ſent by the Queen of *Great Britain* to induce the King of *Sweden* to leave *Germany* I. 247. Seeing him intent to be revenged of the Czar, he leaves him without making any propoſal 248

Mansfield, Brigadier, commands a detachment at the bridge of *Grodno* I. 261. Retires before the King of *Sweden* ib. Is put under arreſt 262. Makes his eſcape, and deſerts to the enemy *ib.*

Matucoff, Mr., the Czar's ambaſſador at *London*, is arreſted for a ſmall debt I. 287. Is bailed by the *Portugueze* miniſter *ib.* Inſiſts for ſatisfaction 288

Mazepa, *John*, is made Hettman of the *Ukraine* I. 87. Commands with Marſhal *Sheremetoff* againſt the *Turks* 103. Has the command of 60,000 *Coſſacks* in *Black Ruſſia* 203. Loſes the beſt opportunity of joining the King of *Sweden* 203. Preſſes the King of *Sweden* to march to the *Ukraine* 273. Joins the King of *Sweden* 280. Account of his life and character *ib.* Moſt of his troops leave him and repair to the Czar 285.

Menzekoff, *Alexander*, is for continuing the *Ruſſian* cuſtom of making attacks in the night-time I 188. Made Governor of *Ingria*, and inſtalled knight of St. *Andrew* 192. Made a Prince of the *Roman* empire 222. Joins King *Auguſtus* with a detachment at *Peterkaw* 226. Commands the right of the *Ruſſians* at *Caliſh* 227. Adviſes King *Auguſtus* to march into *Saxony* and attack the King of *Sweden* 229. Attacks *Baturin*, the reſidence of *Mazepa* 285. Pillages and burns the town *ib.* Marches in purſuit of the *Swedes* at *Pultawa* 302. General *Levenhaupt* ſurrenders to him 303. Makes himſelf maſter of *Rugen* II. 54. Levies a large ſum at *Hamburgh* ib. Tried and found guilty of mal-adminiſtration 174. Is fined 175. His life and character 274

Mechlenburgh, Duke of, marries the Princeſs *Catharine*, daughter to Czar *John*, and niece to *Peter* the Great II. 73. Great diſorders occaſioned by a miſunderſtanding between the Duke and the nobility 154. The Emperor of *Germany* ſends perſons to examine into theſe differences, but the Duke applies to the Czar, who ſends troops to ſupport him 155

Michael Theodorowich Romanow elected Czar I 55. Cauſes the ſecond falſe *Demetrius*'s ſon and his mother *Maria Anne* be thruſt under the ice at *Occa* ib. Orders a third falſe *Demetrius* to be executed 56

Moſcow built by Czar *Alexander* I. 13. Is beſieged and taken by the Cham of *Tartary* 18. Pillaged and burnt by the *Tartars* 26. Burnt by the *Poles*, who maſſacre vaſt numbers of the inhabitants 53. A great fire breaks out in it 163. The great bell there *ib.* Feaſting and rejoicings there on the victory at *Pultawa* 310

Mydel, General, undertakes to diſturb the works at St. *Petersburgh* and *Cronſtat* I. 196. Makes another fruitleſs attempt on St. *Petersburgh* 205

Muldavians join the Czar II. 23

N

Narva inveſted by Czar *Peter*'s forces I. 144. A party from the garriſon attack the Author's command *ib.* The trenches opened 148. The King of *Sweden* comes to its relief 149. Battle near it 150. Again beſieged 180. One of the baſtions falls down 187. Is taken by aſſault 189. Liſt of the priſoners taken 191. Great quantities of artillery, ammunition, *&c.* found in it and *Ivanogrsd* 193

Natalia, Princeſs, her character II. 288

Nieſtadt, plenipotentiaries from the Czar and *Sweden* repair thither and begin their conferences II. 201. A treaty concluded 202.

Notteburgh ſurrenders to the *Ruſſians* I. 169. The articles of capitulation *ib.* Its name changed to *Sleutelburgh* 170

Noſticz, General, takes *Elbing* by ſurprize II. 9

Norris, Sir John, arrives in the road of *Copenhagen* with a large fleet of ſhips under his convoy II. 77. Arrives in the *Sound* with a ſquadron of *Britiſh* men of war 161. Sails towards the *Swediſh* ports 163. Receives a letter from Czar *Peter* enquiring into his deſigns *ib.* Joins the *Swediſh* fleet *ib.* His letter to Prince *Dolgoruky* 187. Returns to *England* 194

Nyenchance taken by the Czar I. 170. St. *Petersburgh* built on it *ib.*

Nyſlot taken by the *Ruſſians* II. 57

O

Officers, foreign, in *Peter* the Great's ſervice, their objections to the treaty concluded by Prince *Dolgoruky* at *Narva* I. 152. Shew their diſſent thereto by quitting their commands and retiring in a body 153

Ogla, Queen, revenges the death of her huſband *Igor* I. 9. Is converted to the Chriſtian faith 10

Ogilvie, Marſhal, carries on the ſiege of *Narva* I. 180. His ſtratagem 181. Alters the cuſtom the *Ruſſians* had of making their attacks in the night-time 184 and 188. Gives the Governor no time to repair the breaches 189. Enters the town *ib.* Summons *Ivanogrod* 192. He, together with King *Auguſtus*, gets the the command of the army at *Grodno* 211. Sends a detach-

detachment under Major-general *Slough* to intercept a part of the King of *Sweden*'s baggage 215. A letter writ by him on this occaſion 216. Other two letters on the ſame ſubject 218, 220. Demoliſhes the works at *Grodno* 221. Marches to the frontiers of *Ruſſia* 222. Some account of him II. 283

Oginsky Staroſta, made Great-general of *Lithuania* in room of Prince *Wieſnowitsky* I. 235

Oſtwolod, Czar, ſucceeds *Wolodimir* II. I. 12

Ottoman Porte, ſends an ambaſſador to *Peter* the Great, to notify the new Sultan's acceſſion to the throne I. 193. Sends an ambaſſador to the King of *Sweden* 259

Ottoman army marches againſt the *Ruſſians* II. 26. Comes up with them at the *Pruth* 27. Is twice repulſed *ib.* The Grand Viſier takes a bribe and concludes a treaty with the Czar 29. Is reflected upon for it 32

P

Patcul, General, is arreſted by order of King *Auguſtus* I. 223

Peter the Great born I. 64. Proclaimed Czar along with his elder brother *John* 79. Diſapproves early the manner the Czars uſed to live in 83. Is in danger from the intrigues of his ſiſter Princeſs *Sophia* 87. Marries the daughter of the Boyar *Theodore Abramowich Lapachin* 89. Diſcovers the deſigns of Prince *Baſil Galitzen* againſt him 90. He and his Empreſs retire to a convent with their friends *ib.* Is followed by General *Patrick Gordon* and all the foreign officers 91. Returns to *Moſcow* ib. Puniſhes the rebels *ib.* Aboliſhes a cruel cuſtom *ib.* Takes the ſole government on himſelf 92. Comes to a good underſtanding with the Emperor of *China* 93. Sends a ſolemn embaſſy thither 94. Builds a fort at *Archangel* ib. Beſieges *Aſoph* 97. Raiſes the ſiege and returns to *Moſcow* 102. Makes preparations to beſiege *Aſoph* again 104. Gets ſeveral officers, engineers and miners from the Emperor, *&c.* 105. Deſtroys the *Turkiſh* fleet in the *Black-ſea* 106. Appoints a publick thankſgiving for the taking *Aſoph* 110. Builds ſeveral forts on the *Black-ſea* ib. Makes his triumphant entry into *Moſcow* ib. A plot againſt his life diſcovered 111. His generoſity to *Pouſchin*'s lady on that event 112. Sets out on his travels 113. Arrives at *Koningsbergh* ib. Is ſtopt from viewing the fortifications at *Riga* ib. Arrives at *Amſterdam* 114. Has an interview with King *William* at *Utrecht* ib. Enters into an alliance with the Emperor and *Venice* againſt the *Turks* 116. Arrives at *London* ib. Returns to *Holland* 117. His behaviour in a ſtorm at ſea 118. Viſits the Queen of *Poland* ib. Arrives at *Vienna* ib. Pays a viſit to the Emperor 119. Gets

notice of the revolt of the *Strelitzes* 120. Meets with King *Auguſtus* at *Reva* ib. Arrives at *Moſcow* 121. Enters into a truce with the *Turks* 133. Makes preparations for a war with *Sweden* 138. Breaks the *Strelitzes* 139. The method he took to raiſe a new army *ib.* Sets about reforming his whole empire 141. Introduces trades and manufactures, *&c* 143. Proclaims war againſt *Sweden* 144. Cauſes General *Bruce* be put under arreſt *ib.* Comes to the ſiege of *Narva* 147. Goes to *Novogrod* to haſten ſupplies of ammunition and troops 148. His behaviour on hearing his troops were defeated at *Narva* 155. Takes meaſures for repairing his loſs 156. Refuſes to make peace with the King of *Sweden* unleſs he would reſtore the province of *Ingria* 161. The true cauſe of his declaring war againſt *Sweden* ib. Meets with King *Auguſtus* at *Birzen* 162. Endeavours to perſuade the *Poles* to join in the war againſt *Sweden* 163. Sends an Ambaſſador to *Denmark* for the ſame purpoſe *ib.* Invites foreigners to enter into his army 165. Marches into *Ingria* ib. Makes preſents to the officers and ſoldiers who had been wounded 169. Repairs the fortifications of *Notteburgh* 170. Takes *Nyenchance* ib Founds St. *Peterſburgh* on it *ib.* Builds the harbour of *Cronſtat* 171. Alters the coin 172. Enters *Moſcow* in triumph 176. Exhorts the *Poles* to adhere to King *Auguſtus* 178. Makes a new alliance with him *ib.* Orders *Narva* and *Derpt* to be inveſted 179. Shuts up Commodore *Loſcher* in the river *Embach* 180. Enters *Derpt* and receives the ſubmiſſion of the inhabitants 186. Publiſhes a declaration there *ib.* Marches to *Narva* 187. Enters the town 189. Forbids all farther execution under pain of death *ib.* Cauſes put ſafeguards in all churches and principal places *ib.* Sets Colonel *Slepenback* at liberty 190. Puniſhes Baron *Horn* for his cruelty 191. Cauſes ſing *Te deum* on taking the town *ib.* Inſtitutes the order of knights of St. *Andrew* 192. Returns to *Moſcow*, and expoſes to his people the trophies of his campaign 196. Sends Marſhal *Sheremetoff* to *Courland* 197. His ſaying on hearing of the battle of *Gemaurthoff* 202. Iſſues a manifeſto in behalf of King *Auguſtus* ib. Takes *Courland* under his protection 205. Perplexes the deliberations of the dyet of *Warſaw* 206. Marches to *Grodno* 207. Is maſter of all *Lithuania* ib. Goes out to meet King *Auguſtus* 208. Enters into an alliance with the *Poliſh* ſenators 210. Hears of a revolt at *Aſtracan*, and ſets out for *Moſcow* 211. Goes on board his fleet near the iſland *Ratuſary* 223; from thence to *Mohilow* ib. Sends Prince *Menzekoff*

zekoff with a detachment into *Poland* 226. Gives preſents to the generals, *&c.* at the battle of *Caliſh* 229. Is diſpleaſed at King *Auguſtus*'s conduct 230. Obliged to alter his meaſures by the unfaithful ſtep of his ally 232. Meets with ſeveral of the *Poliſh* ſenators at *Zolkiow* 234. Endeavours to perſuade them to declare both *Auguſtus* and *Staniſlaus* incapable of poſſeſſing the throne 235. Sends Prince *Dolgoruky* to the council at *Limberg* 237. Goes himſelf thither with Prince *Menzekoff*, &c. 239. His declaration to the ſenators 241 Takes meaſures for protecting the dyet at *Lublin* 244. Prevails with the Pope not to acknowledge *Staniſlaus* 248 Intreats Queen *Anne* and the States-general not to guarantee the treaty concluded between the King of *Sweden* and King *Auguſtus* 249. Publiſhes an univerſalia inviting the adherents of *Staniſlaus* to the dyet of *Lublin* 250. Repairs thither 252. Refuſes Pr. *Ragotſky*'s offer *ib.* His propoſitions to the dyet 253. Orders all the countries in *Poland* to be laid waſte through which the King of *Sweden* was to paſs 255. Goes to St. *Petersburgh* 257. His anſwer when told that the *Swedes* were of opinion their King would finiſh the war by one deciſive ſtroke 258. Orders troops to the *Turkiſh* frontiers 259. Sets out for *Moſcow* ib. Puniſhes the ringleaders of the rebellion at *Aſtracan* ib. Finiſhes the great Royal diſpenſary 260. Repairs to *Grodno* 261. Retires on the King of *Sweden*'s forcing the bridge 261. Shuns coming to a battle I. 263. Falls ill 265. Recovers his health and takes a journey to *Moſcow* 266. Joins his army after the battle of *Holowſin* 269. Makes no attempt to hinder the King of *Sweden* from croſſing the *Boriſthenes* 270. Is in no more pain about his enemies 272. Marches with a body of troops to prevent General *Levenhaupt*'s joining the King of *Sweden* 273. Attacks *Levenhaupt*, and obliges him to retire leaving his proviſions, ammunition, *&c.* 275. Sends a detachment in purſuit of him 276, Loſes an opportunity 279. Makes *Scuropatſky* Hettman in place of *Mazepa* 280. Sends troops into *Poland* 289. His troops ſucceſsful in *Finland* 292. Marches with his whole army to the relief of *Pultawa* 296. Takes the command on himſelf at that battle 297. Gains a compleat victory 300. Requires the Grand Seignior to deliver up the King of *Sweden* and *Mazepa* 306. Cauſes the *Swediſh* generals dine with him *ib.* His diſcourſe with General *Renſhild* 307. Enters into a new alliance with King *Auguſtus* and the King of *Denmark* ib. Publiſhes a manifeſto in oppoſition to the King of *Sweden*'s 308. His regard to the Duke of *Wirtemberg* ib.

ib. Deliberates in a great council of war on his future operations 310.

Peter the Great joins General *Goltz* at *Hyanow* II. 2. Meets with King *Auguſtus* at *Thorn* 3. Has an interview with the King of *Pruſſia* ib. Is waited on by Count *Fleming* ib. Marries his niece to the Duke of *Courland* 4. Inveſts *Riga* 5. His triumphal entry into *Moſcow* 6. Renews the treaty with the *Turks* 7. Reſolves to attack the *Swedes* in *Pomerania* 14. The Sultan breaks with him 22. He writes to the *Porte* ib. His letter not delivered *ib.* Marches to the frontiers of *Poland* 23, and towards the *Pruth* contrary to the advice of his generals 26. Repulſes the *Turks* twice *ib.* Is in great anxiety 28. Bribes the prime Viſier, who concludes a treaty with him 29. His great error in deſpiſing the *Turks* too much 30. Marches his army back into *Poland* 32. Marries his ſon the Czarowich to the princeſs of *Wolfenbuttle* 34. Celebrates the feſtival of St. *Andrew* at *Riga* ib. Wants to be admitted among the Princes of the *German* empire, but is oppoſed 35. Renews the treaty with the Sultan 37. Withdraws his troops from *Poland* 40. Goes incognito to *Berlin*, and has an interview with the King of *Pruſſia* 41. Diſtributes money among the diſtreſſed inhabitants of *Altena* 49. Attacks *Frederickſtadt* in perſon 50. Takes it, and greatly diſtreſſes *Steinbock* ib. Goes to *Hanover* 51. Makes a deſcent upon *Finland* ib. Defeats the *Swedes* at *Pulcona* 53. Attacks and beats the *Swediſh* Admiral *Erenſchield* 58. His ſpeech to the old *Ruſſian* gentry 59. His grandchild the Princeſs *Natalia* born 62. His great care to improve St. *Petersburgh* 63. Puniſhes ſeveral great men for illegal practices 65. Makes an alliance with *Poland*, *Denmark* and *Pruſſia* againſt *Charles* XII. 68. Sends a body of troops into the *Ukraine* to obſerve the motions of the *Turks* 69. Sails with a large fleet towards the iſland of *Jutland* ib. Thence to the coaſt of *Sundermania*, where he cauſes the troops debark and plunder the country 70. Has a ſon born by the Empreſs *Katharine* 71. Sets out for *Dantzick* with the Empreſs *Katharine* 72. Marries his niece the Princeſs *Katharine* to the Duke of *Mecklinburgh* 73. Reſolves to give him poſſeſſion of *Wiſmar* ib. Goes to *Koningsberg* ib. Gives audience to the *Perſian* Ambaſſador *ib.* Returns to *Dantzick* 74. Makes a demand for money upon the magiſtrates of *Dantzick* ib. Goes to *Stetin*, where he has a private conference with the King of *Pruſſia* ib. They both agree that it would be bad policy to aſſiſt the King of *Denmark* to make freſh conqueſts in *Sweden* 75. The ſource of the Czar's grudge at King

King *George* I. *ib.* The King of *Denmark* viſits him at *Altena* ib. They concert meaſures to make a deſcent upon *Schonen*, order a large body of troops to the iſland of *Rugen* 76. Arrives with the Empreſs at *Lubeck* ib. Amuſes himſelf with the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* fleets before *Copenhagen* 77. Suſpends his deſign upon *Schonen* 78; which is ill taken by the King of *Denmark* 79. Marches his troops out of the *Daniſh* dominions *ib.* Has a private interview with the King of *Pruſſia* 80. Arrives at *Amſterdam* ib. How he ſpent his time in *Holland* 82. The Empreſs arrives at *Amſterdam* ib. Their majeſties go to the *Hague* ib. Accuſed of a deſign in favour of the Chevalier de St. *George* 83; which he abſolutely denies *ib.* Arrives at *Paris* 84. Leaves *France* 90. Arrives at St. *Petersburgh*, where he finds that during his abſence ſeveral abuſes had crept into the government, and that the Czarowich had made an elopement 91. Examines the conduct of thoſe in the adminiſtration during his abſence 93. Puniſheth abuſes 94. Introduces ſeveral regulations *ib.* Hears of an inſurrection of the *Cuban Tartars* ib. Takes meaſures to ſuppreſs it 95. Goes to *Moſcow* ib. His letter to the Czarowich 96. *See* an account of his conduct in the proceſs againſt this unhappy Prince from *p.* 96. to 145. Has a conference with Baron *Gortz* about the ſtate of affairs 147. Both he and the *Swedes* ſeem inclined to peace 148. Sends General *Bruce* and Baron *Gortz* plenipotentiaries to *Abo* ib. but the *Swediſh* plenipotentiaries not appearing, he prepares for a deſcent on *Sweden* ib. Advances with his fleet towards the iſland of *Hango*, and from thence to *Abo* ib. The conference betwixt the plenipotentiaries transferred to *Allandt* ib. Plan agreed upon by *Gortz* and *Oſterman* 150. Returns to St. *Petersburgh*, and finds the Empreſs *Katharine* had brought him another daughter, the Princeſs *Natalia* 154. Threatens the *Swedes* with fire and ſword if they declined entering into the plan of *Gortz* and *Oſterman* 157. Is abandoned by his allies 158. Reſolves upon an immediate deſcent on *Sweden*, and publiſhes a declaration containing his reaſons *ib.* Falls upon *Sweden* and commits great depredations on the country 159. Sends *Oſterman* with freſh propoſals to the *Swedes* 163; which are rejected *ib.* The Queen of *Sweden* applies to him to ceaſe hoſtilities 164. He is convinced of the diſpoſition of the *Britiſh* court 165. Cauſes arreſt the *Britiſh* merchants, and threatens to confiſcate their effects 166. Publiſhes a memorial at *London* ib. which is anſwered by King *George* as King of *Britain* and elector of *Hanover* 167, 169. Eſtabliſhes

a council to have the overſight of the mines, founderies, &c. 178. From a political view he commends the medicinal ſprings at *Alonitz* ib. His great reſpect for the memory of Dr. *Areſkine* his phyſician *ib.* Makes a new inquiry into the conduct of thoſe in the adminiſtration of affairs 171. His ſpeech to the court appointed to try theſe matters 172. Sends an Ambaſſador into *Perſia* 175. Brings a vaſt ſum into his treaſury by fining delinquents 176. Builds an obſervatory *ib.* Creates his jeſter a Count 177. Gives encouragement to the Roman catholick clergy, excepting jeſuits *ib.* He erects ſeveral publick works 179. Carries on the war alone againſt *Sweden* ib. The dyet of *Poland* apply to him for reparation of damages ſuſtained by his troops 180. He gives them good words *ib.* His reſident ordered to leave the court of *Britain* 186. Rejects the mediation of *Great Britain* betwixt him and *Sweden* 189. The new King of *Sweden* ſends a compliment to him 190. His Admiral attacks and beats the *Swediſh* fleet off *Lumland* 191. Sends a compliment to the King of *Sweden* 193. The Duke of *Holſtein* applies for his protection 195. Accepts the mediation of the court of *France* betwixt him and *Sweden* 197. Publiſhes a favourable edict for *Great Britain* 200. Concludes a peace with *Sweden* 202. Introduces new regulations 206. Takes the title of Emperor *ib.* His titles 209. His triumphant entry into *Moſcow* 213. Publiſhes a declaration with regard to the ſucceſſion 214. His expedition into *Perſia* from *p.* 218 to 240. Cauſes rigg out a large fleet 242. Conjectures about this armament *ib.* His demands on the King of *Denmark* 244. He embarks at *Revel* 245. The method he took to get a clear notion of ſhipping 246. Concludes an alliance with the Schah of *Perſia* 249. Gives order for the coronation of the Empreſs *Katharine* 254. Sickens 255. Eſtabliſhes a new academy *ib.* His ſpeech to the foreign miniſters *ib.* Sets out for *Moſcow* 256. A deſign diſcovered againſt his life *ib.* The conſpirators diſcovered and broke upon the wheel *ib.* Makes great preparations to aſſiſt the Schah 259. Abridges the revenues of the clergy 260. Catches a ſevere cold 261. Falls ſick, names his ſucceſſor, and dies *ib.* His character *ib.* Anecdotes of him 304

Peter, Prince, the Czarowich's ſon born II. 71.

Peter, Prince, the Czar's ſon born II. 71. Dies 177

Petersburgh St., built I. 170. Deſcription of it II. 173

Peterborough, Earl of, endeavours to perſuade the King of *Sweden* not to go to *Dreſden* ſo ill attended I. 250

Perſian

INDEX.

Perſian Ambaſſador arrives at St. *Petersburgh* II. 61.

Pernaw ſurrenders to the Czar II. 20

Perſia, ſome account of affairs in that kingdom II. 218. Czar *Peter*'s expedition thither 225, 232

Phyſick, but of late introduced into *Ruſſia* I. 7

Plague, rages at *Riga* II. 20

Poland, dyet of, apply to the Czar to withdraw his troops II. 154

Poliſh Ambaſſador arrives at St. *Petersburgh* II. 185. His ſpeech *ib.*

Primate of *Poland*, an unſteady truckling kind of man I. 177. Refuſes to crown King *Staniſlaus* 196

Pultawa, inveſted by the King of *Sweden* I. 295. Battle of 296. Order of the *Ruſſian* and *Swediſh* armies 297. The battle begins 300. *Voltaire* in a miſtake *ibid.* note. *Swedes* intirely defeated *ib.* Liſt of the killed, wounded and priſoners 301. An inſcription on that occaſion 310

R

Reſan, Governor of, his ſtratagem I. 19

Ren, General, defeats General *Slepenback* at *Reval* I. 182. Makes himſelf maſter of *Bautſk* 206. The caſtle of *Mittau* ſurrenders to him *ib.* Endeavours to lay *Dantzick* under contribution 247. Incommodes the King of *Sweden* on his march 272

Renſhild, General, defeats General *Shullembourg* at *Travenſtadt* I. 218. Is taken priſoner at *Pultawa* 301. His anſwer to Czar *Peter* 306

Rentzel, General, makes his eſcape with 1500 *Ruſſians*, which King *Auguſtus* had agreed ſhould be delivered to the King of *Sweden* I. 245

Revel ſurrenders II. 20

Revenues of *Ruſſia* ſcarce amount to two millions *Sterling* I. 172

Riga inveſted II. 5. The Governor publiſhes a declaration 6. Surrenders after great diſtreſs 19

Romodanoſky, *Michael Gregorowich*, ſent with a body of the *Strelitzes* to the fronters of *Lithuania* I. 121. Sends notice to the regency of the *Strelitzes*'s deſertion and march to *Moſcow* 122

Rurick, firſt ſovereign of all *Ruſſia* I. 9

Ruſſia, its extent and boundaries I. 1. Its ſoil 3. Not two-thirds of it inhabited *ib.* Produce 4. Deſcription of the inhabitants *ib.* Seaſons 6. Has plenty of cattle, fowl and fiſhes 5. and 7. Is moſtly plain except to the northward of *Archangel* 6. Origin of the empire 8. Account of its revenues, taxes, forces, *&c.* II. 298. Its coins, weights and meaſures 320

Ruſſians converted to the Chriſtian faith I. 10. Obſerve the rites of the *Greek* church 11. Are reformed by *Peter* the Great 141. The manner their marriages were uſed to be made

I. 142. Did not reliſh Czar *Peter*'s innovations 143. Were in a ſhort time quite metamorphoſed *ib.* Grow ſtill more expert in war 174. Were in uſe of making their attacks in the night-time 185. Make great rejoicings after the battle of *Pultawa* 309

Ruſſian army not near ſo numerous at the ſiege of *Narva* as ſome authors relate I. 151. The loſs they ſuſtained 154. Are defeated in *Courland* 195. Make dreadful ravages in *Poland* 256. Get advantages by ſea 265. Reſolve to wait the King of *Sweden* at *Holowſin* 267

S

Samoides, their mock Kingdies II. 63

Sandomir, confederacy of, ſupports King *Auguſtus* I. 178

Schults, Colonel, defeats the partiſan *Smegilſky* at *Lubrinſka* I. 245. Burns and deſtroys the lands belonging to the adherents of *Staniſlaus* ib.

Sheremetoff, Marſhal, takes ſeveral towns from the *Turks* I. 103. Marches into *Livonia* 164. Defeats ſeveral parties of *Swedes* ib. Defeats Major-general *Slepenback* at *Derpt* ib. Marches to *Pleſkow* 165. Then to *Stagriltz* 166. Defeats *Slepenback* again 167. Beſieges *Notteburgh* 168; which ſurrenders to him 169. Carries on the ſiege of *Derpt* 180. Goes to *Courland* in queſt of General *Levenhaupt* 197. Sends General *Bower* with a detachment to *Mittau* 198. Attacks *Levenhaupt* at *Gemaurthoff* 199. Retires to his baggage 201. Marches to *Cracow* 244. Is joined by General *Rentzel* 245. Publiſhes a declaration in *Livonia* II. 5. Sent to reduce *Stralſund* 70. Dies 171. Account of his life and character 282

Shein, Alexis Simeonowich, made Generaliſſimo at the ſiege of *Aſoph* I. 105. Goes thither to complete the fortifications 115. Marches from *Moſcow* againſt the *Strelitzes* 123

Sinaus, Rurick and *Trewor*, firſt founders of the *Ruſſian* monarchy I. 8

Siberia, becomes ſubject to *Ruſſia* I. 33

Slepenback, Major-general, is defeated by Marſhal *Sheremetoff* at *Derpt* I. 164. Meditates revenge 165. Marches to *Stagriltz* 166. Is defeated again 167. Retires under the canon of *Pernaw* ib. Defeated by General *Renn* at *Reval* 182. Attacks the right wing of the *Ruſſians* at *Pultawa* 298. His detachment purſues the *Ruſſians* too far, and is cut off from the main body of their army *ib.* Is taken priſoner with his whole body 299

Smegilſky, partiſan, leaves *Auguſtus*'s party and joins *Staniſlaus* I. 236. Is defeated by Colonel *Schults* 245

Sophia, Princeſs, ſiſter of the Czars *John* and *Peter*, is of an ambitious and maſculine ſpirit I. 87. Deſigns to make Prince *Baſil Galitzen*

Galitzen partner of her bed, and cut off the Czars *John* and *Peter* ib. Cauſes murder *Havanſky* and his ſon 88. Is ſhut up in a convent 92, Is concerned in the revolt of the *Strelitzes* 130

Stagriltz, battle of, I. 167

Staniſlaus Leſchinſky, is elected King of *Poland* by the influence of the King of *Sweden* I. 195. His letter to King *Auguſtus* 232. Is congratulated by the *Ottoman Porte* 259. Is defeated by General *Goltz* 290. Marches back into *Great Poland* 291. Keeps himſelf concealed 311. Is made priſoner in *Turky* II. 2

Staroſta Grudzinſky, attacks and gets an advantage over the *Ruſſians* II. 45. Is defeated by General *Bower* 46

Stenko Razin, raiſes a rebellion I. 57. Seizes on *Aſtracan* 58; alſo on *Zaratow* and *Samara* ib. Repulſed at *Simboſkoy* with conſiderable loſs *ib.* Is abandoned by his friends 60. Broke on the wheel 61

Stenbuck, General, beats the *Danes* at *Gaddebuſh* II. 42. Burns *Altena* 48. Surrenders at diſcretion 53. Dies *ib.*

Stetin ſurrenders to the *Ruſſians* II. 54

Stralſund ſurrenders to the confederates II. 72

Strelitzes, their inſurrection I. 69. They grow more inſolent 75. Their bloody rage 77. Are at laſt pacified 82. Their pretence, and the true cauſe of their rebellion 83. They revolt again 122. March for *Moſcow* ib. Surrender 128. Their motives for rebellion 129. Are puniſhed 130. The whole body of them broke 139

Story of Czar *John Baſiliwick* and the *French* Ambaſſador I. 36

Sublicow, Boyar, is Governor of *Aſoph* I. 131. Beats the *Tartars* ib.

Swarts, Colonel, ſuppreſſes an inſurrection of the *Cuban Tartars* II. 71. In the utmoſt conſternation 159

Sweden, King of, comes to the relief of *Narva* I. 149. Defeats the *Ruſſians* 150. His overſight in allowing the *Ruſſians* to return to their own country 155. His ſecond overſight 157. Defeats the *Saxons* near *Riga* 158. Lays down the plan of dethroning King *Auguſtus* ib. Defeats King *Auguſtus* at *Clitchoff* 168. Imagines he would get the towns Czar *Peter* was daily taking from him reſtored with intereſt when he came to treat with him at *Moſcow* 178. Procures the dyet of *Poland* to dethrone King *Auguſtus* and elect *Staniſlaus* in his room 196. Loſes an opportunity 203. Never called a council of war or took any advice 204. Continues in *Poland* undervaluing his enemies 205. At laſt ſets out in queſt of the *Ruſſians* 211. Croſſes the *Niemen* 213. Comes up before the lines at *Grodno* ib. He retires on finding the *Ruſſians* ſo ſtrongly intrenched

214. This the only time he ever came up with an enemy with a view to attack them without doing it *ib.* Enters *Saxony* 225. Raiſes great contributions there 231. Obliges King *Auguſtus* to congratulate King *Staniſlaus* on his acceſſion to the throne *ib.* Is flattered by the court of *France* 247. The Duke of *Marlborough* pays him a viſit 248. His extraordinary viſit to King *Auguſtus* 256. His difficult march thro' *Poland* 258. Is congratuled on his victories by the *Ottoman Porte* 259. Paſſes the *Viſtula* 260. Forces the paſs at *Grodno* 261. Diſperſes his troops into winter quarters 263. Attacks the *Ruſſian* lines at *Holowſin* 267. Finds the *Ruſſians* much improven in the art of war 268. New errors in his conduct 269. Sends orders to General *Levenhaupt* to join him 270. Croſſes the *Boriſthenes* 271. Marches towards the *Ukraine* 273. Is diſappointed of the reinforcement he expected from *Levenhaupt* 278. Deſigns to croſs the river *Diſna* ib. His paſſage oppoſed by General *Gordon* ib. Croſſes the *Diſna* 279. Is joined by *Mazepa* 280. A reflection on his conduct 292. His army in great diſtreſs 293. Takes and demoliſhes *Vopruz* 294. Marches to *Pultawa* 295. Writes to *Staniſlaus* to join him *ib.* Inveſts *Pultawa* 296. Attacks the Czar 298. Is defeated 301. The litter in which he was obliged to ride on account of his wound found broken to pieces *ib.* Croſſes the *Boriſthenes* 303. The Governor of *Oczacow* makes difficulty of allowing him to croſs the *Bog* 305. Is received by the Baſſa of *Bender* with all poſſible reſpect 306. Publiſhes a manifeſto inviting the *Coſſacks* to break from the Czar 307. Is much mortified with the reſolution of the Divan II. 24. His intrigues at the *Porte ib.* Arrives at the *Turkiſh* camp at the *Pruth*, but not till after the treaty with the Czar was concluded 30. Abuſes the grand Viſier *ib.* Forms new parties in *Turky* 35. 41. Is ordered to quit the Grand Seignor's dominions 47; which he refuſes to do *ib.* Arrives at *Stralſund* from *Turky* 67. Immediately ſets about renewing the war with *Ruſſia* ib. Leaves *Stralſund*, which ſurrenders two days after 72. Lays ſiege to *Fredrickſhall*, where he is killed 155. His death cauſes a great change of affairs in the north *ib.*

Swedes poſſeſſed with the opinion that one of them was able to beat five *Ruſſians* I. 165. Take umbrage at the building St. *Petersburgh* and *Cronſtat* 171. Find they had taught the *Ruſſians* the art of war 272. Their loſs when attacked by the Czar at the river *Pronia* 277. Their miſerable condition after the battle of *Pultawa* 305.

Sweden in the utmoſt conſternation II. 159. Plundered and ravaged by the *Ruſſians* 161, 162, 192, 201. Makes peace with *Ruſſia* 185

T

Tartars formerly made frequent incurſions into *Ruſſia* I. 3. Demand liberty from the *Turks* to renew their incurſions 175. Without effect 176

Teutonick order extinguiſhed in *Livonia* I. 24

Theodore, Czar, ſucceeds *John Baſiliwick* II. I. 37. Dies without iſſue *ib.*

Theodore II. ſucceeds *Alexis* I. 66. Enters into an alliance with *Poland* againſt the *Turks* ib. Makes peace with the *Turks* 68. Marries a lady of *Poliſh* extraction, which offends the nobility 69. His ſecond marriage *ib.* Dies without iſſue *ib.*

Turks, a body of them endeavour to force their way into *Aſoph* I. 108. Deſire peace 133

Teſſa, a party of *Ruſſians* defeated there by the *Swedes* II. 162

U

Ulrica, Princeſs, ſiſter to *Charles* XII. of *Sweden* ſucceeds him in the throne II. 156. She publiſhes a manifeſto in anſwer to one publiſhed by the Czar 158. Reſigns the crown in favours of the Prince of *Heſſe Caſſel* her huſband 185

V

Veronitz, the Czar forms a project of ſending ſhips from thence to the *Black-ſea* I. 95

W

Warſaw, confederacy of, dethrone King *Auguſtus* I. 195. Elect *Staniſlaus Leſchinſky* King of *Poland* ib. A great council held there II. 13

Watrang, the *Swediſh* Admiral, gains ſome advantages on the coaſt of *Finland* II. 57

Weid, *Adam*, directs the mines at the ſiege of *Aſoph* I. 101. Is obliged to abſcond on account of his miſcarriage *ib.* Is poſitive to ſubmit to the King of *Sweden*'s terms at *Narva* 153. Is releaſed in exchange for General *Marderſelt* 229

Whiteworth the *Britiſh* Ambaſſador gives ſatisfaction to the Czar for the affront his Ambaſſador had got at *London* II. 72

Wiburgh beſieged II. 17. Surrenders *ib.* The garriſon arreſted *ib.* The Governor of it makes himſelf maſter of the iſland of *Malin* 57. Takes *Nyſlot* ib.

Wieſnowitſky, Great-general of *Lithuania*, joins *Staniſlaus* I. 235. Great part of his forces leave him and join *Oginſky* 236. Publiſhes an univerſalia in anſwer to one publiſhed by Czar *Peter* 251

Wiſmar receives a garriſon of *Hanoverians* II. 75

Wirtemberg, Duke of, taken priſoner at the battle of *Pultawa* I. 301. His death *ib.* The Czar ſends his heart to his mother *ib.* An inſcription on the occaſion 308

Wolodimir,

Wolodimir, marries *Anna* ſiſter of *Baſil* Emperor of *Greece* I. 10. The *Ruſſians* converted to the Chriſtian faith in his reign *ib.* Removes his reſidence to *Pereſlaw* 11. Divides the empire among his ten ſons *ib.* *Wolodimir* II. reunites the empire I. 12.

Z

Zuſky, *Baſil Iwonowich*, cauſes murder the firſt falſe *Demetrius* I. 48. Is proclaimed Czar 49 Diſturbed by a ſecond *Demetrius* ib. Depoſed and ſent priſoner to *Sigiſmund* 52.

Explanation of FOREIGN WORDS.

BOYAR, Lord.
Caviar, roe of ſturgeon.
Copeek, coin = to a halfpenny Sterling.
Hettman, General.
Ruble, coin worth about 4 *s.* 3*d.* Sterling.
Spahis, *Aſiatick* cavalry.
Werſt, = ⅔ of a mile *Engliſh.*
Woywode, chief magiſtrate.

F I N I S.

MVSEVM BRITAN NICVM

Page 196, 227, 238. Vol. I. for *Pineaſky* read *Sineaſky.*

Directions to the BOOKBINDER.

Place the Head of PETER the GREAT fronting Vol. I. The Head of the AUTHOR fronting his Life. The Head of Prince MENZEKOFF fronting Vol. II. The MAP of RUSSIA fronting the HISTORY OF RUSSIA, Vol. I. Book I.

BOOKS *printed and ſold by* F. DOUGLASS *and* W. MURRAY, *at their Shops in the* Broad-gate, *Aberdeen.*

FAMILIAR LETTERS on ſeveral important Subjects, by *James Howell*, Eſq; Clerk of the Privy-Council to King *Charles* I.----Theſe Letters are wrote from the Year 1618 to 1650, and contain a great many curious Particulars relating to the Hiſtory of that Period. Price 3 s. bound in Calf.

Advice to a Daughter chiefly with Regard to Religion. Price 6 d.

The Life of God in the Soul of Man; or the Nature and Excellency of the Chriſtian Religion: With Nine other Diſcourſes on important Subjects, by *Henry Scougal*, A. M. To which is added, A Sermon preached at the Author's Funeral, by *George Gairden* D. D. Price bound 2 s. 6 d.

The Life of God in the Soul of Man. Price bound 8 d.

Short and plain Directions for the ſpending of one Day well. Price 1 d. ſtitch'd, or 6 s the Hundred to thoſe that give them away.

A Letter to Mr. *James Man*, on his late Performance againſt Mr. *Ruddiman*. Price 4 d.

The neceſſary Knowledge of the Lord's Supper, and the neceſſary Preparation for it, ſhewn

The

from the Words of its Inſtitution. Price 3 d. or one Guinea per Hundred.

The Gentle Shepherd, a paſtoral Comedy. Price 6 d. fine, and 4 d. coarſe Paper.

Cato, a Tragedy, by *Joſeph Addiſon*, Eſq; Price 6 d.

Eſſay on Man.-----Ethic Epiſtles,-----Epiſtles to Sundries, by Mr. *Pope*. Price 6 d. each.

Chevy-Chaſe and Hardyknute, with a Preface and Notes. Price 4 d.

The Pſalm-Book. Price 1 s. fine, and 8 d. coarſe Paper.

Tranſlations and Paraphraſes, in Verſe, from different Paſſages of Holy Scripture, collected and prepared by a Committee of the General Aſſembly of the Church of *Scotland*, in a Size fit to be bound up with the Pſalm-book. Price 4 d. fine, and 3 d. coarſe Paper.

Prior's Poems, 2 Volumes. Price 5 s. bound in Calf and Letter'd.